

ISSN 1652-4934

Archives of ALGA

Volume 7/8, 2010-2011

ALGA Publications
Karlskrona, Sweden

Volume 7/8, 2010-2011

ISSN 1652-4934

Archives of ALGA

Editor: Nail H. Ibragimov

Revised edition

**ALGA Publications
Karlskrona, Sweden**

Information for authors

The manuscript should be prepared in LaTeX using only the standard LaTeX commands. The manuscripts should be sent to nib@bth.se.

1. The author assigns to ALGA the exclusive right to reproduce the contribution in Archives of ALGA and to distribute it both in printed and electronic versions. The latter includes publication at the ALGA website.
2. The author retains the right to republish the contribution in whole or in part in his further research, education and for other purposes without asking written permission from ALGA.
3. The copyright to the whole volume of Archives belongs solely to ALGA.

© 2010-2011 ALGA

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, without written permission from ALGA.

Printed in Sweden by *Psilander Grafiska*

Contents

Nail H. Ibragimov

Nonlinear self-adjointness in constructing conservation laws	1
PART 1. Nonlinear self-adjointness	2
1 Preliminaries	2
1.1 Notation	2
1.2 Linear self-adjointness	3
1.3 Adjoint equations to nonlinear differential equations	3
1.4 The case of one dependent variable	5
1.5 Construction of adjoint equations to linear equations	6
1.6 Self-adjointness and quasi self-adjointness	8
2 Strict self-adjointness via multipliers	12
2.1 Motivating examples	12
2.2 Linear heat equation	14
2.3 Nonlinear heat equation	14
2.4 The Burgers equation	15
2.5 Heat conduction in solid hydrogen	15
2.6 Harry Dym equation	16
2.7 Kompaneets equation	16
3 General concept of nonlinear self-adjointness	18
3.1 Two definitions and their equivalence	18
3.2 Remark on differential substitutions	20
3.3 Nonlinear heat equation	21
3.4 Anisotropic nonlinear heat equation	22
3.5 Nonlinear wave equations	23
3.6 Anisotropic nonlinear wave equation	25
3.7 Nonlinear self-adjointness and multipliers	27
4 Generalized Kompaneets equation	29
4.1 Introduction	29
4.2 Discussion of self-adjointness of the Kompaneets equation	30
4.3 The generalized model	32

5	Quasi self-adjoint reaction-diffusion models	35
6	A model of an irrigation system	38
Part 2. Construction of conservation laws using symmetries		40
7	Discussion of the operator identity	40
7.1	Operator identity and alternative proof of Noether's theorem	40
7.2	Test for total derivative and for divergence	42
7.3	Adjoint equation to linear ODE	43
7.4	Conservation laws and integrating factors for linear ODEs	45
7.5	Application of the operator identity to linear PDEs	49
7.6	Application of the operator identity to nonlinear equations	50
8	Conservation laws: Generalities and explicit formula	51
8.1	Preliminaries	51
8.2	Explicit formula for conserved vectors	54
9	A nonlinearly self-adjoint irrigation system	56
10	Utilization of differential substitutions	58
10.1	Equation $u_{xy} = \sin u$	58
10.2	Short pulse equation	59
11	Gas dynamics	63
11.1	Classical symmetries and conservation laws	63
11.2	Adjoint equations and self-adjointness when $n = 1$	65
11.3	Adjoint system to equations (11.1) with $n \geq 2$	66
11.4	Application to nonlocal symmetries of the Chaplygin gas	66
11.5	The operator identity for nonlocal symmetries	76
12	Comparison with the "direct method"	77
12.1	General discussion	77
12.2	Examples and exercises	79
Part 3. Utilization of conservation laws for constructing solutions of PDEs		83
13	General discussion of the method	83
14	Application to the Chaplygin gas	84
14.1	Detailed discussion of one case	84
14.2	Differential constraints provided by other conserved vectors	86
15	Application to nonlinear equation describing an irrigation system	87
Part 4. Approximate self-adjointness and approximate conservation laws		88
16	The van der Pol equation	88
16.1	Approximately adjoint equation	88
16.2	Approximate self-adjointness	88
16.3	Exact and approximate symmetries	90
16.4	Approximate conservation laws	90

17	Perturbed KdV equation	92
17.1	Approximately adjoint equation	92
17.2	Approximate self-adjointness	92
17.3	Approximate symmetries	94
17.4	Approximate conservation laws	94

Bibliography **95**

Elena D. Avdonina and Nail H. Ibragimov

	Equivalence algebra of the generalized Kompaneets equation	100
1	Introduction	100
2	Equivalence group generators	101
3	A model with additional symmetry	105

Bibliography **108**

Nail H. Ibragimov

	Equivalence group analysis of reaction-diffusion model	109
	Part 1. Systems with nonlinear cross-diffusion	109
1	Introduction	109
2	Equivalence group and determining equations	110
2.1	Notation	110
2.2	Extended form of Equations (1.1)	111
2.3	Determining equations	112
3	Preliminary analysis of determining equations	114
3.1	Integration of equations $\omega_\sigma^\alpha = 0$	114
3.2	Simplifications derived from Equations (2.30), (2.31)	116
3.3	Results of preliminary analysis	117
4	Solution of determining equations	118
4.1	Determining equations after simplification	118
4.2	Integration of determining equations	121
5	Equivalence Lie algebra	122
5.1	Basis of the equivalence algebra	122
5.2	Projections	123
5.3	Principal Lie algebra	123
	Part 2. Systems with linear cross-diffusion	124
6	Introduction	124
7	Determining equations for equivalence group	124
7.1	Equivalence group	124
7.2	Determining equations	126
8	Preliminary analysis of determining equations	127

8.1	Integration of equations $\omega_\sigma^\alpha = 0$	127
8.2	Simplifications derived from equations (7.26), (7.27)	129
8.3	Results of preliminary analysis	130
9	Solution of determining equations	131
9.1	Determining equations after simplification	131
9.2	Integration of determining equations	133
10	Equivalence Lie algebra	134
10.1	Basis of the equivalence algebra	134
10.2	Projections	135
10.3	Principal Lie algebra	135
10.4	Commutator table for operators (10.6)	136

Bibliography **137**

Nail H. Ibragimov

	KP equation: Nonlinear self-adjointness and conservation laws	138
1	Lie point symmetries of the KP equation	138
2	Nonlinear self-adjointness	139
3	Conservation laws provided by Lie point symmetries	140

Bibliography **145**

Nail H. Ibragimov and Raisa Khamitova

	Nonlinear self-adjointness and conservation laws of the Thomas equation	147
1	Introduction	147
2	Nonlinear self-adjointness	148
3	Symmetries of the Thomas equation	150
4	Conservation laws due to nonlinear self-adjointness	152
4.1	Case 1: $v = e^\phi$, $\phi = 2(\beta y + \alpha x + \gamma u)$	152
4.2	Case 2: $v = B(x, y)e^{\gamma u}$, $B_{xy} - \alpha B_y - \beta B_x = 0$	155
5	Application of Noether's theorem	157
6	Summary	157

Bibliography **159**

NONLINEAR SELF-ADJOINTNESS IN CONSTRUCTING CONSERVATION LAWS

NAIL H. IBRAGIMOV
Department of Mathematics and Science,
Blekinge Institute of Technology,
SE-371 79 Karlskrona, Sweden

Abstract. The general concept of nonlinear self-adjointness of differential equations is introduced. It includes the linear self-adjointness as a particular case. Moreover, it embraces the previous notions of self-adjoint [1] and quasi self-adjoint [2] nonlinear equations. The class of nonlinearly self-adjoint equations includes, in particular, all linear equations. Conservation laws associated with symmetries can be constructed for all nonlinearly self-adjoint differential equations and systems. The number of equations in systems can be different from the number of dependent variables.

Keywords: Nonlinear self-adjointness, Strict and quasi self-adjointness, Conservation laws, Kompaneets equation, Reaction-diffusion model, Short pulse equation, Chaplygin gas, Approximate self-adjointness, Approximate conservation laws.

MSC: 70S10, 35C99, 35G20

PACS: 02.30.Jr, 11.15.-j, 02.20.Tw

PART 1

Nonlinear self-adjointness

1 Preliminaries

The concept of self-adjointness of nonlinear equations was introduced [1, 3] for constructing conservation laws associated with symmetries of differential equations. To extend the possibilities of the new method for constructing conservation laws the notion of quasi self-adjointness was suggested in [2]. I introduce here the general concept of *nonlinear self-adjointness*. It embraces the previous notions of self-adjoint and quasi self-adjoint equations and includes the linear self-adjointness as a particular case. But the set of nonlinearly self-adjoint equations is essentially wider and includes, in particular, *all* linear equations. The construction of conservation laws demonstrates a practical significance of the nonlinear self-adjointness. Namely, *conservation laws can be associated with symmetries for all nonlinearly self-adjoint differential equations and systems*. In particular, this is possible for all linear equations and systems.

1.1 Notation

We will use the following notation. The independent variables are denoted by

$$x = (x^1, \dots, x^n).$$

The dependent variables are

$$u = (u^1, \dots, u^m).$$

They are used together with their first-order partial derivatives $u_{(1)}$:

$$u_{(1)} = \{u_i^\alpha\}, \quad u_i^\alpha = D_i(u^\alpha),$$

and higher-order derivatives $u_{(2)}, \dots, u_{(s)}, \dots$, where

$$u_{(2)} = \{u_{ij}^\alpha\}, \quad u_{ij}^\alpha = D_i D_j(u^\alpha), \dots,$$

$$u_{(s)} = \{u_{i_1 \dots i_s}^\alpha\}, \quad u_{i_1 \dots i_s}^\alpha = D_{i_1} \dots D_{i_s}(u^\alpha).$$

Here D_i is the total differentiation with respect to x^i :

$$D_i = \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} + u_i^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial u^\alpha} + u_{ij}^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial u_j^\alpha} + \dots \quad (1.1)$$

A locally analytic function $f(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(k)})$ of any finite number of the variables $x, u, u_{(1)}, u_{(2)}, \dots$ is called a *differential function*. The set of all differential functions is denoted by \mathcal{A} . For more details see [4], Chapter 8.

1.2 Linear self-adjointness

Recall that the adjoint operator F^* to a linear operator F in a Hilbert space H with a scalar product (u, v) is defined by

$$(Fu, v) = (u, F^*v), \quad u, v \in H. \quad (1.2)$$

Let us consider, for the sake of simplicity, the case of one dependent variable u and denote by H the Hilbert space of real valued functions $u(x)$ such that $u^2(x)$ is integrable. The scalar product is given by

$$(u, v) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} u(x)v(x)dx.$$

Let F be a linear differential operator in H . Its action on the dependent variable u is denoted by $F[u]$. The definition (1.2) of the adjoint operator F^* to F ,

$$(F[u], v) = (u, F^*[v]),$$

can be written, using the divergence theorem, in the simple form

$$vF[u] - uF^*[v] = D_i(p^i), \quad (1.3)$$

where v is a new dependent variable, and p^i are any functions of $x, u, v, u_{(1)}, v_{(1)}, \dots$

It is manifest from Eq. (1.3) that the operators F and F^* are mutually adjoint,

$$(F^*)^* = F. \quad (1.4)$$

In other words, the adjointness of linear operators is a *symmetric relation*.

The linear operator F is said to be self-adjoint if $F^* = F$. In this case we say that the equation $F[u] = 0$ is self-adjoint. Thus, the self-adjointness of a linear equation $F[u] = 0$ can be expressed by the equation

$$F^*[v] \Big|_{v=u} = F[u]. \quad (1.5)$$

1.3 Adjoint equations to nonlinear differential equations

Let us consider a system of m differential equations (linear or nonlinear)

$$F_\alpha(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}) = 0, \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, m, \quad (1.6)$$

with m dependent variables $u = (u^1, \dots, u^m)$. Eqs. (1.6) involve the partial derivatives $u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}$ up to order s .

Definition 1.1. The *adjoint equations* to Eqs. (1.6) are given by

$$F_\alpha^*(x, u, v, u_{(1)}, v_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}, v_{(s)}) = 0, \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, m, \quad (1.7)$$

with

$$F_\alpha^*(x, u, v, u_{(1)}, v_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}, v_{(s)}) = \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u^\alpha}, \quad (1.8)$$

where \mathcal{L} is the *formal Lagrangian* for Eqs. (1.6) defined by ¹

$$\mathcal{L} = v^\beta F_\beta \equiv \sum_{\beta=1}^m v^\beta F_\beta. \quad (1.9)$$

Here $v = (v^1, \dots, v^m)$ are new dependent variables, $v_{(1)}, \dots, v_{(s)}$ are their derivatives, e.g. $v_{(1)} = \{v_i^\alpha\}$, $v_i^\alpha = D_i(v^\alpha)$. We use $\delta/\delta u^\alpha$ for the Euler-Lagrange operator

$$\frac{\delta}{\delta u^\alpha} = \frac{\partial}{\partial u^\alpha} + \sum_{s=1}^{\infty} (-1)^s D_{i_1} \cdots D_{i_s} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{i_1 \dots i_s}^\alpha}, \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, m,$$

so that

$$\frac{\delta(v^\beta F_\beta)}{\delta u^\alpha} = \frac{\partial(v^\beta F_\beta)}{\partial u^\alpha} - D_i \left(\frac{\partial(v^\beta F_\beta)}{\partial u_i^\alpha} \right) + D_i D_k \left(\frac{\partial(v^\beta F_\beta)}{\partial u_{ik}^\alpha} \right) - \dots .$$

The total differentiation (1.1) is extended to the new dependent variables:

$$D_i = \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} + u_i^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial u^\alpha} + v_i^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial v^\alpha} + u_{ij}^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial u_j^\alpha} + v_{ij}^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial v_j^\alpha} + \dots . \quad (1.10)$$

The adjointness of *nonlinear* equations is not a symmetric relation. In other words, nonlinear equations, unlike the linear ones, do not obey the condition (1.4) of mutual adjointness. Instead, the following equation holds:

$$(F^*)^* = \hat{F} \quad (1.11)$$

where \hat{F} is the *linear approximation* to F defined as follows. We use the temporary notation $F[u]$ for the left-hand side of Eq. (1.6) and consider $F[u + w]$ by letting $w \ll 1$. Then neglecting the nonlinear terms in w we define \hat{F} by the equation

$$F[u + w] \approx F[u] + \hat{F}[w] \quad (1.12)$$

For linear equations we have $\hat{F} = F$, and hence Eq. (1.11) is identical with Eq. (1.4).

¹See [1]. An approach in terms of variational principles is developed in [5].

Let us illustrate Eq. (1.11) by the equation

$$F \equiv u_{xy} - \sin u = 0. \quad (1.13)$$

Eq. (1.8) yields

$$F^* \equiv \frac{\delta}{\delta u} [v(u_{xy} - \sin u)] = v_{xy} - v \cos u \quad (1.14)$$

and

$$(F^*)^* \equiv \frac{\delta}{\delta v} [w(v_{xy} - v \cos u)] = w_{xy} - w \cos u. \quad (1.15)$$

Let us find \hat{F} by using Eq. (1.12). Since $\sin w \approx w$, $\cos w \approx 1$ when $w \ll 1$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} F[u + w] &\equiv (u + w)_{xy} - \sin(u + w) \\ &= u_{xy} + w_{xy} - \sin u \cos w - \sin w \cos u \\ &\approx u_{xy} - \sin u + w_{xy} - w \cos u, \\ &= F[u] + w_{xy} - w \cos u. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, by (1.12) and (1.15), we have

$$\hat{F}[w] = w_{xy} - w \cos u = (F^*)^* \quad (1.16)$$

in accordance with Eq. (1.11).

1.4 The case of one dependent variable

Let us consider the differential equation

$$F(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}) = 0 \quad (1.17)$$

with one dependent variable u and any number of independent variables. In this case Definition 1.1 of the adjoint equation is written

$$F^*(x, u, v, u_{(1)}, v_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}, v_{(s)}) = 0, \quad (1.18)$$

where

$$F^*(x, u, v, u_{(1)}, v_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}, v_{(s)}) = \frac{\delta(vF)}{\delta u}. \quad (1.19)$$

1.5 Construction of adjoint equations to linear equations

The following statement has been formulated in [1, 3].

Proposition 1.1. In the case of linear differential equations and systems, the adjoint equations determined by Eq. (1.8) and by Eq. (1.3) coincide.

Proof. The proof is based on the statement (see Proposition 7.1 in Section 7.2) that a function $Q(u, v)$ is a divergence, i.e. $Q = D_i(h^i)$, if and only if

$$\frac{\delta Q}{\delta u^\alpha} = 0, \quad \frac{\delta Q}{\delta v^\alpha} = 0, \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, m. \quad (1.20)$$

Let the adjoint operator F^* be constructed according to Eq. (1.3). Let us consider the case of many dependent variables and write Eq. (1.3) as follows:

$$v^\beta F_\beta[u] = u^\beta F_\beta^*[v] + D_i(p^i). \quad (1.21)$$

Applying to (1.21) the variational differentiations and using Eqs. (1.20) we obtain

$$\frac{\delta(v^\beta F_\beta[u])}{\delta u^\alpha} = \delta_\alpha^\beta F_\beta^*[v] \equiv F_\alpha^*[v].$$

Hence, (1.8) coincides with $F_\alpha^*[v]$ given by (1.3).

Conversely, let $F^*[v]$ be given by (1.8),

$$F_\beta^*[v] = \frac{\delta(v^\gamma F_\gamma[u])}{\delta u^\beta}.$$

Consider the expression Q defined by

$$Q = v^\beta F_\beta[u] - u^\beta F_\beta^*[v] \equiv v^\beta F_\beta[u] - u^\beta \frac{\delta(v^\gamma F_\gamma[u])}{\delta u^\beta}.$$

Applying to the first expression for Q the variational differentiations $\delta/\delta u^\alpha$ we obtain

$$\frac{\delta Q}{\delta u^\alpha} = \frac{\delta(v^\beta F_\beta[u])}{\delta u^\alpha} - \delta_\alpha^\beta F_\beta^*[v] \equiv F_\alpha^*[v] - \delta_\alpha^\beta F_\beta^*[v] = 0.$$

Applying $\delta/\delta v^\alpha$ to the second expression for Q we obtain

$$\frac{\delta Q}{\delta v^\alpha} = \delta_\alpha^\beta F_\beta[u] - \frac{\delta}{\delta v^\alpha} \left[u^\beta \frac{\delta(v^\gamma F_\gamma[u])}{\delta u^\beta} \right] \equiv F_\alpha[u] - \frac{\delta}{\delta v^\alpha} \left[u^\beta \frac{\delta(v^\gamma F_\gamma[u])}{\delta u^\beta} \right].$$

The reckoning shows that

$$\frac{\delta}{\delta v^\alpha} \left[u^\beta \frac{\delta(v^\gamma F_\gamma[u])}{\delta u^\beta} \right] = F_\alpha[u]. \quad (1.22)$$

Thus Q solves Eq. (1.20) and hence Eq. (1.21) is satisfied. This completes the proof.

Remark 1.1. Let us discuss the proof of Eq. (1.22) in the case of a second-order linear operator for one dependent variable:

$$F[u] = a^{ij}(x)u_{ij} + b^i(x)u_i + c(x)u.$$

Then we have:

$$u \frac{\delta(vF[u])}{\delta u} = u [cv - vD_i(b^i) + vD_iD_j(a^{ij}) - b^iv_i + 2v_iD_j(a^{ij}) + a^{ij}v_{ij}].$$

Whence, after simple calculations we obtain

$$\frac{\delta}{\delta v} \left[u \frac{\delta(vF[u])}{\delta u} \right] = [cu + b^iu_i + a^{ij}u_{ij}] + \{D_iD_j(a^{ij}u) - D_i(a^{ij}u_j) - D_i[uD_j(a^{ij})]\}$$

and, noting that the expression in the braces vanishes, arrive at Eq. (1.22).

Let us illustrate Proposition 1.1 by the following simple example.

Example 1.1. Consider the heat equation

$$F[u] \equiv u_t - u_{xx} = 0 \quad (1.23)$$

and construct the adjoint operator to the linear operator

$$F = D_t - D_x^2 \quad (1.24)$$

by using Eq. (1.3). Noting that

$$\begin{aligned} vu_t &= D_t(uv) - uv_t, \\ vu_{xx} &= D_x(vu_x) - v_xu_x = D_x(vu_x - uv_x) + uv_{xx} \end{aligned}$$

we have:

$$vF[u] \equiv v(u_t - u_{xx}) = u(-v_t - v_{xx}) + D_t(uv) + D_x(uv_x - vu_x).$$

Hence,

$$vF[u] - u(-v_t - v_{xx}) = D_t(uv) + D_x(uv_x - vu_x).$$

Therefore, denoting $t = x^1$, $x = x^2$, we obtain Eq. (1.3) with $F^*[v] = -v_t - v_{xx}$ and $p^1 = uv$, $p^2 = uv_x - vu_x$. Thus, the adjoint operator to the linear operator (1.24) is

$$F^* = -D_t - D_x^2 \quad (1.25)$$

and the adjoint equation to the heat equation (1.23) is written $-v_t - v_{xx} = 0$, or

$$v_t + v_{xx} = 0. \quad (1.26)$$

The derivation of the adjoint equation (1.26) and the adjoint operator (1.25) by the definition (1.19) is much simpler. Indeed, we have:

$$F^* = \frac{\delta(vu_t - vu_{xx})}{\delta u} = -D_t(v) - D_x^2(v) = -(v_t + v_{xx}).$$

1.6 Self-adjointness and quasi self-adjointness

Recall that a linear differential operator F is called a *self-adjoint operator* if it is identical with its adjoint operator, $F = F^*$. Then the equation $F[u] = 0$ is also said to be self-adjoint. Thus, the self-adjointness of a *linear differential equation* $F[u] = 0$ means that the adjoint equation $F^*[v] = 0$ coincides with $F[u] = 0$ upon the substitution $v = u$. This property has been extended to nonlinear equations in [1]. It will be called here the *strict self-adjointness* and defined as follows.

Definition 1.2. We say that the differential equation (1.17) is *strictly self-adjoint* if the adjoint equation (1.18) becomes equivalent to the original equation (1.17) upon the substitution

$$v = u. \quad (1.27)$$

It means that the equation

$$F^*(x, u, u, \dots, u_{(s)}, u_{(s)}) = \lambda F(x, u, \dots, u_{(s)}) \quad (1.28)$$

holds with a certain (in general, variable) coefficient λ .

Example 1.2. The Korteweg-de Vries (KdV) equation

$$u_t = u_{xxx} + uu_x$$

is strictly self-adjoint [3]. Indeed, its adjoint equation (1.18) has the form

$$v_t = v_{xxx} + uv_x$$

and coincides with the KdV equation upon the substitution (1.27).

In the case of linear equations the strict self-adjointness is identical with the usual self-adjointness of linear equations.

Example 1.3. Consider the linear equation

$$u_{tt} + a(x)u_{xx} + b(x)u_x + c(x)u = 0. \quad (1.29)$$

According to Eqs. (1.18)-(1.19), the adjoint equation to Eq. (1.29) is written

$$\frac{\delta}{\delta u} \{v[u_{tt} + a(x)u_{xx} + b(x)u_x + c(x)u]\} \equiv D_t^2(v) + D_x^2(av) - D_x(bv) + cv = 0.$$

Upon substituting $v = u$ and performing the differentiations it becomes

$$u_{tt} + au_{xx} + (2a' - b)u_x + (a'' - b' + c)u = 0. \quad (1.30)$$

According to Definition 1.2, Eq. (1.29) is strictly self-adjoint if Eq. (1.30) coincides with Eq. (1.29). This is possible if

$$b(x) = a'(x). \quad (1.31)$$

Definition 1.2 is too restrictive. Moreover, it is inconvenient in the case of systems with several dependent variables $u = (u^1, \dots, u^m)$ because in this case Eq. (1.27) is not uniquely determined as it is clear from the following example.

Example 1.4. Let us consider the system of two equations

$$\begin{aligned} u_y^1 + u^2 u_x^2 - u_t^2 &= 0, \\ u_y^2 - u_x^1 &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (1.32)$$

with two dependent variables, $u = (u^1, u^2)$, and three independent variables t, x, y . Using the formal Lagrangian (1.9)

$$\mathcal{L} = v^1(u_y^1 + u^2 u_x^2 - u_t^2) + v^2(u_y^2 - u_x^1)$$

and Eqs. (1.8) we write the adjoint equations (1.7), changing their sign, in the form

$$\begin{aligned} v_y^2 + u^2 v_x^1 - v_t^1 &= 0, \\ v_y^1 - v_x^2 &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (1.33)$$

If we use here the substitution (1.27), $v = u$ with $v = (v^1, v^2)$, i.e. let

$$v^1 = u^1, \quad v^2 = u^2,$$

then the adjoint system (1.33) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} u_y^2 + u^2 u_x^1 - u_t^1 &= 0, \\ u_y^1 - u_x^2 &= 0, \end{aligned}$$

which is not connected with the system (1.32) by the equivalence relation (1.28). But if we set

$$v^1 = u^2, \quad v^2 = u^1,$$

the adjoint system (1.33) coincides with the original system (1.32).

The concept of quasi self-adjointness generalizes Definition 1.2 and is more convenient for dealing with systems (1.6). This concept was formulated in [2] as follows.

The system (1.6) is *quasi self-adjoint* if the adjoint system (1.7) becomes equivalent to the original system (1.6) upon a substitution

$$v = \varphi(u) \quad (1.34)$$

such that its derivative does not vanish in a certain domain of u ,

$$\varphi'(u) \neq 0, \quad \text{where} \quad \varphi'(u) = \left\| \frac{\partial \varphi^\alpha(u)}{\partial u^\beta} \right\|. \quad (1.35)$$

Remark 1.2. The substitution (1.34) defines a mapping

$$v^\alpha = \varphi^\alpha(u), \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, m,$$

from the m -dimensional space of variables $u = (u^1, \dots, u^m)$ into the m -dimensional space of variables $v = (v^1, \dots, v^m)$. It is assumed that this mapping is continuously differentiable. The condition (1.35) guarantees that it is invertible, and hence Eqs. (1.7) and (1.6) are equivalent. The equivalence means that the following equations hold with certain coefficients λ_α^β :

$$F_\alpha^*(x, u, \varphi, \dots, u_{(s)}, \varphi_{(s)}) = \lambda_\alpha^\beta F_\beta(x, u, \dots, u_{(s)}), \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, m, \quad (1.36)$$

where

$$\varphi = \{\varphi^\alpha(u)\}, \quad \varphi_{(\sigma)} = \{D_{i_1} \cdots D_{i_\sigma}(\varphi^\alpha(u))\}, \quad \sigma = 1, \dots, s. \quad (1.37)$$

It can be shown that the matrix $\|\lambda_\alpha^\beta\|$ is invertible due to the condition (1.35).

Example 1.5. The quasi self-adjointness of nonlinear wave equations of the form

$$u_{tt} - u_{xx} = f(t, x, u, u_t, u_x)$$

is investigated in [6]. The results of the paper [6] show that, e.g. the equation

$$u_{tt} - u_{xx} + u_t^2 - u_x^2 = 0 \quad (1.38)$$

is quasi self-adjoint and that in this case the substitution (1.34) has the form

$$v = e^u. \quad (1.39)$$

Indeed, the adjoint equation to Eq. (1.38) is written

$$v_{tt} - v_{xx} - 2vu_{tt} - 2u_tv_t + 2vu_{xx} + 2u_xv_x = 0. \quad (1.40)$$

After the substitution (1.39) the left-hand side of Eq. (1.40) takes the form (1.36):

$$v_{tt} - v_{xx} - 2vu_{tt} - 2u_tv_t + 2vu_{xx} + 2u_xv_x = -e^u[u_{tt} - u_{xx} + u_t^2 - u_x^2]. \quad (1.41)$$

It is manifest from Eq. (1.41) that v given by (1.39) solves the adjoint equation (1.40) if one replaces u by any solution of Eq. (1.38).

In constructing conservation laws one can relax the condition (1.35). Therefore I generalize the previous definition of quasi self-adjointness as follows.

Definition 1.3. The system (1.6) is said to be *quasi self-adjoint* if the adjoint equations (1.7) are satisfied for all solutions u of the original system (1.6) upon a substitution

$$v^\alpha = \varphi^\alpha(u), \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, m, \quad (1.42)$$

such that

$$\varphi(u) \neq 0. \quad (1.43)$$

In other words, the equations (1.36) hold after the substitution (1.42), where not all $\varphi^\alpha(u)$ vanish simultaneously.

Remark 1.3. The condition (1.43), unlike (1.35), does not guarantee the equivalence of Eqs. (1.7) and (1.6) because the matrix $\|\lambda_\alpha^\beta\|$ may be singular.

Example 1.6. It is well known that the linear heat equation (1.23) is not self-adjoint (*not strictly self-adjoint* in the sense of Definition 1.2). It is clear from Eqs. (1.23) and (1.26). Let us test Eq. (1.23) for quasi self-adjointness. Letting $v = \varphi(u)$, we obtain

$$v_t = \varphi' u_t, \quad v_x = \varphi' u_x, \quad v_{xx} = \varphi' u_{xx} + \varphi'' u_x^2,$$

and the condition (1.36) is written:

$$\varphi'(u)[u_t + u_{xx}] + \varphi''(u)u_x^2 = \lambda[u_t - u_{xx}].$$

Whence, comparing the coefficients of u_t in both sides, we obtain $\lambda = \varphi'(u)$. Then the above equation becomes

$$\varphi'(u)[u_t + u_{xx}] + \varphi''(u)u_x^2 = \varphi'(u)[u_t - u_{xx}].$$

This equation yields that $\varphi'(u) = 0$. Hence, Eq. (1.23) is quasi self-adjoint with the substitution $v = C$, where C is any non-vanishing constant. This substitution does not satisfy the condition (1.35).

Example 1.7. Let us consider the Fornberg-Whitham equation [7]

$$u_t - u_{txx} - uu_{xxx} - 3u_x u_{xx} + uu_x + u_x = 0. \quad (1.44)$$

Eqs. (1.18)-(1.19) give the following adjoint equation:

$$F^* \equiv -v_t + v_{txx} + uv_{xxx} - uv_x - v_x = 0. \quad (1.45)$$

It is manifest from the equations (1.44) and (1.45) that the Fornberg-Whitham equation is not strictly self-adjoint. Let us test it for quasi self-adjointness. Inserting in (1.45) the substitution $v = \varphi(u)$ and its derivatives

$$v_t = \varphi' u_t, \quad v_x = \varphi' u_x, \quad v_{xx} = \varphi' u_{xx} + \varphi'' u_x^2, \quad v_{tx} = \varphi' u_{tx} + \varphi'' u_t u_x, \dots,$$

then writing the condition (1.36) and comparing the coefficients for u_t , u_{tx} , u_{xx} , ... one can verify that $\varphi'(u) = 0$. Hence, Eq. (1.44) is quasi self-adjoint but does not satisfy the condition (1.35).

2 Strict self-adjointness via multipliers

It is commonly known that numerous linear equations used in practice, e.g. linear evolution equations, are not self-adjoint in the classical meaning of the self-adjointness. Likewise, useful nonlinear equations such as the nonlinear heat equation, the Burgers equation, etc. are not strictly self-adjoint. We will see here that these and many other equations can be rewritten in a strictly self-adjoint equivalent form by using multipliers. The general discussion of this approach will be given in Section 3.7.

2.1 Motivating examples

Example 2.1. Let us consider the following second-order nonlinear equation

$$u_{xx} + f(u)u_x - u_t = 0. \quad (2.1)$$

Its adjoint equation (1.18) is written

$$v_{xx} - f(u)v_x + v_t = 0. \quad (2.2)$$

It is manifest that the substitution $v = u$ does not map Eq. (2.2) into Eq. (2.1). Hence Eq. (2.1) is not strictly self-adjoint.

Let us clarify if Eq. (2.1) can be written in an equivalent form

$$\mu(u)[u_{xx} + f(u)u_x - u_t] = 0 \quad (2.3)$$

with a certain multiplier $\mu(u) \neq 0$ so that Eq. (2.3) is strictly self-adjoint. The formal Lagrangian for Eq. (2.3) is

$$\mathcal{L} = v\mu(u)[u_{xx} + f(u)u_x - u_t].$$

We have:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} &= D_x^2[\mu(u)v] - D_x[\mu(u)f(u)v] + D_t[\mu(u)v] \\ &\quad + \mu'(u)v[u_{xx} + f(u)u_x - u_t] + \mu(u)f'(u)vu_x, \end{aligned}$$

whence, upon performing the differentiations,

$$\frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} = \mu v_{xx} + 2\mu' v u_{xx} + 2\mu' u_x v_x + \mu'' v u_x^2 - \mu f v_x + \mu v_t.$$

The strict self-adjointness requires that

$$\left. \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} \right|_{v=u} = \lambda[u_{xx} + f(u)u_x - u_t].$$

This provides the following equation for the unknown multiplier $\mu(u)$:

$$(\mu + 2u\mu')u_{xx} + (2\mu' + u\mu'')u_x^2 - \mu f u_x + \mu u_t = \lambda[u_{xx} + f(u)u_x - u_t]. \quad (2.4)$$

Since the right side of Eq. (2.4) does not contain u_x^2 we should have $2\mu' + u\mu'' = 0$, whence $\mu = C_1 u^{-1} + C_2$. Furthermore, comparing the coefficients of u_t in both sides of Eq. (2.4) we obtain $\lambda = -\mu$. Now Eq. (2.4) takes the form

$$(C_2 - C_1 u^{-1})u_{xx} - (C_1 u^{-1} + C_2)f u_x = -(C_1 u^{-1} + C_2)[u_{xx} + f(u)u_x]$$

and yields $C_2 = 0$. Thus, $\mu = C_1 u^{-1}$. We can let $C_1 = -1$ and formulate the result.

Proposition 2.1. Eq. (2.1) becomes strictly self-adjoint if we rewrite it in the form

$$\frac{1}{u} [u_t - u_{xx} - f(u)u_x] = 0. \quad (2.5)$$

Example 2.2. One can verify that the n th-order nonlinear evolution equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} - f(u) \frac{\partial^n u}{\partial x^n} = 0, \quad f(u) \neq 0, \quad (2.6)$$

with one spatial variable x is not strictly self-adjoint. The following statement shows that it becomes strictly self-adjoint after using an appropriate multiplier.

Proposition 2.2. Eq.(2.6) becomes strictly self-adjoint upon rewriting it in the following equivalent form:

$$\frac{1}{uf(u)} \left[\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} - f(u) \frac{\partial^n u}{\partial x^n} \right] = 0. \quad (2.7)$$

Proof. Multiplying Eq. (2.6) by $\mu(u)$ and taking the formal Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L} = v\mu(u)[u_t - f(u)u_n],$$

where $u_n = D_x^n(u)$, we have:

$$\frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} = -D_t[\mu(u)v] - D_x^n[\mu(u)f(u)v] + v\mu'(u)u_t - v[\mu(u)f(u)]'u_n.$$

Noting that $-D_t[\mu(u)v] + v\mu'(u)u_t = -\mu(u)v_t$ and letting $v = u$ we obtain

$$\left. \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} \right|_{v=u} = -\mu(u)u_t - D_x^n[\mu(u)f(u)u] - [\mu(u)f(u)]'uu_n.$$

If we take $\mu(u) = [uf(u)]^{-1}$, then $\mu(u)f(u)u = 1$, $\mu(u)f(u) = u^{-1}$, and hence

$$\left. \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} \right|_{v=u} = -\frac{1}{uf(u)} [u_t - f(u)u_n].$$

Thus, Eq. (2.7) satisfies the strict self-adjointness condition (1.28) with $\lambda = -1$.

2.2 Linear heat equation

Taking in (2.5) $f(u) = 0$, we rewrite the classical linear heat equation $u_t = u_{xx}$ in the following strictly self-adjoint form:

$$\frac{1}{u} [u_t - u_{xx}] = 0. \quad (2.8)$$

This result can be extended to the heat equation

$$u_t - \Delta u = 0, \quad (2.9)$$

where Δu is the Laplacian with n variables $x = (x^1, \dots, x^n)$. Namely, the strictly self-adjoint form of Eq. (2.9) is

$$\frac{1}{u} [u_t - \Delta u] = 0. \quad (2.10)$$

Indeed, the formal Lagrangian (1.9) for Eq. (2.10) has the form

$$\mathcal{L} = \frac{v}{u} [u_t - \Delta u].$$

Substituting it in (1.19) we obtain

$$F^* = -D_t \left(\frac{v}{u} \right) - \Delta \left(\frac{v}{u} \right) - \frac{v}{u^2} [u_t - \Delta u].$$

Upon letting $v = u$ it becomes

$$F^* = -\frac{1}{u} [u_t - \Delta u].$$

Hence, Eq. (2.10) satisfies the condition (1.28) with $\lambda = -1$.

2.3 Nonlinear heat equation

Consider the nonlinear heat equation $u_t - D_x(k(u)u_x) = 0$, or

$$u_t - k(u)u_{xx} - k'(u)u_x^2 = 0. \quad (2.11)$$

Its adjoint equation has the form

$$v_t + k(u)v_{xx} = 0.$$

Therefore it is obvious that (2.11) does not satisfy Definition 1.2. But it becomes strictly self-adjoint if we rewrite it in the form

$$\frac{1}{u} [u_t - k(u)u_{xx} - k'(u)u_x^2] = 0. \quad (2.12)$$

Indeed, the formal Lagrangian (1.9) for Eq. (2.12) is written

$$\mathcal{L} = \frac{v}{u} [u_t - k(u)u_{xx} - k'(u)u_x^2].$$

Substituting it in (1.19) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} F^* &= -D_t \left(\frac{v}{u} \right) - D_x^2 \left(\frac{v}{u} k(u) \right) + 2D_x \left(\frac{v}{u} k'(u)u_x \right) \\ &\quad - \frac{v}{u} k'(u)u_{xx} - \frac{v}{u} k''(u)u_x^2 - \frac{v}{u^2} [u_t - k(u)u_{xx} - k'(u)u_x^2]. \end{aligned}$$

Letting here $v = u$ we have:

$$F^* = -\frac{1}{u} [u_t - k(u)u_{xx} - k'(u)u_x^2].$$

Hence, Eq. (2.10) satisfies the strict self-adjointness condition (1.28) with $\lambda = -1$.

2.4 The Burgers equation

Taking in (2.5) $f(u) = u$ we obtain the strictly self-adjoint form

$$\frac{1}{u} [u_t - u_{xx}] - u_x = 0 \quad (2.13)$$

of the Burgers equation $u_t = u_{xx} + uu_x$.

2.5 Heat conduction in solid hydrogen

According to [8], the heat conduction in solid crystalline molecular hydrogen at low pressures is governed by the nonlinear equation (up-to positive constant coefficient)

$$u_t = u^2 \Delta u. \quad (2.14)$$

It is derived from the Fourier equation

$$\rho c_* \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} = \nabla \cdot (k \nabla T)$$

using the empirical information that the density ρ at low pressures has a constant value, whereas the specific heat c_* and the thermal conductivity k have the estimations

$$c_* \cong T^3, \quad k \cong T^3 (1 + T^4)^{-2}.$$

It is also shown in [8] that the one-dimensional equation (2.14),

$$u_t = u^2 u_{xx}, \quad (2.15)$$

is related to the linear heat equation by a non-point transformation (Eq. (5) in [8]). A similar relation was found in [9] for another representation of Eq. (2.15). The non-point transformation of Eq. (2.15) to the linear heat equation

$$w_s = w_{\xi\xi} \quad (2.16)$$

is written in [10] as the differential substitution

$$t = s, \quad x = w, \quad u = w_\xi. \quad (2.17)$$

It is also demonstrated in [10], Section 20, that Eq. (2.15) is the unique equation with nontrivial Lie-Bäcklund symmetries among the equations of the form

$$u_t = f(u) + h(u, u_x), \quad f'(u) \neq 0.$$

The connection between Eq. (2.15) and the heat equation is treated in [11] as a reciprocal transformation [11]. It is shown in [12] that this connection, together with its extensions, allows the analytic solution of certain moving boundary problems in nonlinear heat conduction.

Our Example 2.2 from Section 2.1 reveals one more remarkable property of Eq. (2.15). Namely, taking $n = 2$ and $f(u) = u^2$ in Eq. (2.7) we see that Eq. (2.15) becomes strictly self-adjoint if we rewrite it in the form

$$\frac{u_t}{u^3} = \frac{u_{xx}}{u}. \quad (2.18)$$

2.6 Harry Dym equation

Taking in Example 2.2 from Section 2.1 $n = 3$ and $f(u) = u^3$ we see that the Harry Dym equation

$$u_t - u^3 u_{xxx} = 0 \quad (2.19)$$

becomes strictly self-adjoint upon rewriting it in the form

$$\frac{u_t}{u^4} - \frac{u_{xxx}}{u} = 0.$$

2.7 Kompaneets equation

The equations considered in Sections 2.1 - 2.6 are quasi self-adjoint. For example, for Eq. (2.6) we have

$$F^* = -v_t - D_x^n(f(u)v) - v f'(u)u_n,$$

whence making the substitution

$$v = \frac{1}{f(u)}$$

we obtain

$$F^* = \frac{f'}{f^2} u_t - \frac{f'}{f} u_n = \frac{f'}{f^2} [u_t - f(u) u_n].$$

Hence, Eq. (2.6) is quasi self-adjoint.

Example 2.3. The Kompaneets equation

$$u_t = \frac{1}{x^2} D_x [x^4(u_x + u + u^2)] \quad (2.20)$$

provides an example of an equation that is not quasi self-adjoint. Indeed, Eq. (2.20) has the formal Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L} = v[-u_t + x^2 u_{xx} + (x^2 + 4x + 2x^2 u)u_x + 4x(u + u^2)].$$

The calculation yields the following adjoint equation to (2.20):

$$\frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} \equiv v_t + x^2 v_{xx} - x^2(1 + 2u)v_x + 2(x + 2xu - 1)v = 0. \quad (2.21)$$

Letting $v = \varphi(u)$ one obtains:

$$\begin{aligned} \left. \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} \right|_{v=\varphi(u)} &= \varphi'(u)[u_t + x^2 u_{xx} - x^2(1 + 2u)u_x] \\ &\quad + \varphi''(u)x^2 u_x^2 + 2(x + 2xu - 1)\varphi(u). \end{aligned}$$

Writing the quasi self-adjointness condition (1.36) in the form

$$\left. \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} \right|_{v=\varphi(u)} = \lambda[-u_t + x^2 u_{xx} + (x^2 + 4x + 2x^2 u)u_x + 4x(u + u^2)]$$

and comparing the coefficients for u_t in both sides one obtains $\lambda = -\varphi'(u)$, so that the quasi self-adjointness condition takes the form

$$\begin{aligned} &\varphi'(u)[u_t + x^2 u_{xx} - x^2(1 + 2u)u_x] + \varphi''(u)x^2 u_x^2 + 2(x + 2xu - 1)\varphi(u) \\ &= \varphi'(u)[u_t - x^2 u_{xx} - (x^2 + 4x + 2x^2 u)u_x - 4x(u + u^2)]. \end{aligned}$$

Comparing the coefficients for u_{xx} in both sides we obtain $\varphi'(u) = 0$. Then the above equation becomes $(x + 2xu - 1)\varphi(u) = 0$ and yields $\varphi(u) = 0$. Hence the Kompaneets equation is not quasi self-adjoint because the condition (1.43) is not satisfied.

But we can rewrite Eq. (2.20) in the strictly self-adjoint form by using a more general multiplier than above, namely, the multiplier

$$\mu = \frac{x^2}{u}. \quad (2.22)$$

Indeed, upon multiplying by this μ Eq. (2.20) is written

$$\frac{x^2}{u} u_t = \frac{1}{u} D_x [x^4(u_x + u + u^2)].$$

Its formal Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L} = \frac{v}{u} \{-x^2 u_t + D_x [x^4(u_x + u + u^2)]\}$$

satisfies the strict self-adjointness condition (1.28) with $\lambda = -1$:

$$\left. \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} \right|_{v=u} = -\frac{1}{u} \{-x^2 u_t + D_x [x^4(u_x + u + u^2)]\}.$$

Remark 2.1. Note that $v = x^2$ solves Eq. (2.21) for any u . The connection of this solution with the multiplier (2.22) is discussed in Section 3.7. See also Section 4.

3 General concept of nonlinear self-adjointness

Motivated by the examples discussed in Sections 1 and 2 as well as other similar examples, I suggest here the general concept of *nonlinear self-adjointness* of systems consisting of any number of equations with m dependent variables. This concept encapsulates Definition 1.2 of strict self-adjointness and Definition 1.3 of quasi self-adjointness. The new concept has two different features. They are expressed below by two different but equivalent definitions.

3.1 Two definitions and their equivalence

Definition 3.1. The system of \bar{m} differential equations (compare with Eqs. (1.6))

$$F_{\bar{\alpha}}(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}) = 0, \quad \bar{\alpha} = 1, \dots, \bar{m}, \quad (3.1)$$

with m dependent variables $u = (u^1, \dots, u^m)$ is said to be *nonlinearly self-adjoint* if the *adjoint equations*

$$F_{\alpha}^*(x, u, v, u_{(1)}, v_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}, v_{(s)}) \equiv \frac{\delta(v^{\bar{\beta}} F_{\bar{\beta}})}{\delta u^{\alpha}} = 0, \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, m, \quad (3.2)$$

are satisfied for all solutions u of the original system (3.1) upon a substitution

$$v^{\bar{\alpha}} = \varphi^{\bar{\alpha}}(x, u), \quad \bar{\alpha} = 1, \dots, \bar{m}, \quad (3.3)$$

such that

$$\varphi(x, u) \neq 0. \quad (3.4)$$

In other words, the following equations hold:

$$F_{\alpha}^*(x, u, \varphi(x, u), \dots, u_{(s)}, \varphi_{(s)}) = \lambda_{\alpha}^{\bar{\beta}} F_{\bar{\beta}}(x, u, \dots, u_{(s)}), \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, m, \quad (3.5)$$

where $\lambda_{\alpha}^{\bar{\beta}}$ are undetermined coefficients, and $\varphi_{(\sigma)}$ are derivatives of (3.3),

$$\varphi_{(\sigma)} = \{D_{i_1} \cdots D_{i_{\sigma}}(\varphi^{\bar{\alpha}}(x, u))\}, \quad \sigma = 1, \dots, s.$$

Here v and φ are the \bar{m} -dimensional vectors

$$v = (v^1, \dots, v^{\bar{m}}), \quad \varphi = (\varphi^1, \dots, \varphi^{\bar{m}}),$$

and Eq. (3.4) means that not all components $\varphi^{\bar{\alpha}}(x, u)$ of φ vanish simultaneously.

Remark 3.1. If the system (3.1) is *over-determined*, i.e. $\bar{m} > m$, then the adjoint system (3.2) is *sub-definite* since it contains $m < \bar{m}$ equations for \bar{m} new dependent variables v . Vice versa, if $\bar{m} < m$, then the system (3.1) is sub-definite and the adjoint system (3.2) is over-determined.

Remark 3.2. The adjoint system (3.2), upon substituting there any solution $u(x)$ of Eqs. (3.1), becomes a linear homogeneous system for the new dependent variables $v^{\bar{\alpha}}$. The essence of Eqs. (3.5) is that for the self-adjoint system (3.1) there exist functions (3.3) that provide a non-trivial (not identically zero) solution to the adjoint system (3.2) for all solutions of the original system (3.1). This property can be taken as the following alternative definition of the nonlinear self-adjointness.

Definition 3.2. The system (3.1) is nonlinearly self-adjoint if there exist functions $v^{\bar{\alpha}}$ given by (3.3) that solve the adjoint system (3.2) for all solutions $u(x)$ of Eqs. (3.1) and satisfy the condition (3.4).

Proposition 3.1. The above two definitions are equivalent.

Proof. Let the system (3.1) be nonlinearly self-adjoint by Definition 3.1. Then, according to Remark 3.2, the system (3.1) satisfies the condition of Definition 3.2.

Conversely, let the system (3.1) be nonlinearly self-adjoint by Definition 3.2. Namely, let the functions $v^{\bar{\alpha}}$ given by (3.3) and satisfying the condition (3.4) solve the adjoint system (3.2) for all solutions $u(x)$ of Eqs. (3.1). This is possible if and only if Eqs. (3.5) hold. Then the system (3.1) is nonlinearly self-adjoint by Definition 3.1.

Example 3.1. It has been mentioned in Example 1.2 that the KdV equation

$$u_t = u_{xxx} + uu_x \quad (3.6)$$

is strictly self-adjoint. In terms of Definition 3.2 it means that $v = u$ solves the adjoint equation

$$v_t = v_{xxx} + uv_x \quad (3.7)$$

for all solutions of the KdV equation (3.6). One can verify that the general substitution of the form (3.3), $v = \varphi(t, x, u)$, satisfying Eq. (3.5) is given by

$$v = A_1 + A_2u + A_3(x + tu), \quad (3.8)$$

where A_1, A_2, A_3 are arbitrary constants. One can also check that v given by Eq. (3.8) solves the adjoint equation (3.7) for all solutions u of the KdV equation. The solution $v = x + tu$ is an invariant of the Galilean transformation of the KdV equation and appears in different approaches (see [10], Section 22.5, and [13]). Thus, the KdV equation is nonlinearly self-adjoint with the substitution (3.8).

Proposition 3.2. Any linear equation is nonlinearly self-adjoint.

Proof. This property is the direct consequence of Definition 3.2 because the adjoint equation $F^*[v] = 0$ to a linear equation $F[u] = 0$ does not involve the variable u .

3.2 Remark on differential substitutions

One can further extend the concept of self-adjointness by replacing the *point-wise* substitution (3.3) with *differential* substitutions of the form

$$v^{\bar{\alpha}} = \varphi^{\bar{\alpha}}(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(r)}), \quad \bar{\alpha} = 1, \dots, \bar{m}. \quad (3.9)$$

Then Eqs. (3.5) will be written, e.g. in the case $r = 1$, as follows:

$$F_{\alpha}^*(x, u, \varphi, \dots, u_{(s)}, \varphi_{(s)}) = \lambda_{\alpha}^{\bar{\beta}} F_{\bar{\beta}} + \lambda_{\alpha}^{j\bar{\beta}} D_j(F_{\bar{\beta}}). \quad (3.10)$$

Example 3.2. The reckoning shows that the equation

$$u_{xy} = \sin u \quad (3.11)$$

is not self-adjoint via a point-wise substitution $v = \varphi(x, y, u)$, but it is self-adjoint in the sense of Definition 3.1 with the following differential substitution:

$$v = \varphi(x, y, u_x, u_y) \equiv A_1[xu_x - yu_y] + A_2u_x + A_3u_y, \quad (3.12)$$

where A_1, A_2, A_3 are arbitrary constants. The adjoint equation to Eq. (3.11) is

$$v_{xy} - v \cos u = 0,$$

and the self-adjointness condition (3.10) with the function φ given by (3.12) is satisfied in the form

$$\varphi_{xy} - \varphi \cos u = (A_1x + A_2)D_x(u_{xy} - \sin u) + (A_3 - A_1y)D_y(u_{xy} - \sin u). \quad (3.13)$$

3.3 Nonlinear heat equation

3.3.1 One-dimensional case

Let us apply the new viewpoint to the nonlinear heat equation (2.11), $u_t = (k(u)u_x)_x$, discussed in Section 2.3. We will take it in the expanded form

$$u_t - k(u)u_{xx} - k'(u)u_x^2 = 0, \quad k(u) \neq 0. \quad (3.14)$$

The adjoint equation (1.18) to Eq. (3.14) is

$$v_t + k(u)v_{xx} = 0. \quad (3.15)$$

We take the substitution (3.3) written together with the necessary derivatives:

$$\begin{aligned} v &= \varphi(t, x, u), \\ v_t &= \varphi_u u_t + \varphi_t, \quad v_x = \varphi_u u_x + \varphi_x, \\ v_{xx} &= \varphi_u u_{xx} + \varphi_{uu} u_x^2 + 2\varphi_{xu} u_x + \varphi_{xx}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.16)$$

and arrive at the following self-adjointness condition (3.5):

$$\begin{aligned} &\varphi_u u_t + \varphi_t + k(u)[\varphi_u u_{xx} + \varphi_{uu} u_x^2 + 2\varphi_{xu} u_x + \varphi_{xx}] \\ &= \lambda[u_t - k(u)u_{xx} - k'(u)u_x^2]. \end{aligned} \quad (3.17)$$

The comparison of the coefficients of u_t in both sides of Eq. (3.17) yields $\lambda = \varphi_u$. Then, comparing the terms with u_{xx} we see that $\varphi_u = 0$. Hence Eq. (3.17) reduces to

$$\varphi_t + k(u)\varphi_{xx} = 0 \quad (3.18)$$

and yields $\varphi_t = 0$, $\varphi_{xx} = 0$, whence $\varphi = C_1 x + C_2$, where $C_1, C_2 = \text{const}$. We have demonstrated that Eq. (3.14) is nonlinearly self-adjoint by Definition 3.1 and that the substitution (3.3) has the form

$$v = C_1 x + C_2. \quad (3.19)$$

The same result can be easily obtained by using Definition 3.2. We look for the solution of the adjoint equation (3.15) in the form $v = \varphi(t, x)$. Then Eq. (3.15) has the form (3.18). Since it should be satisfied for all solutions u of Eq. (3.14), we obtain $\varphi_t = 0$, $\varphi_{xx} = 0$, and hence Eq. (3.19).

3.3.2 Multi-dimensional case

The similar analysis can be applied to the nonlinear heat equation with several variables $x = (x^1, \dots, x^n)$:

$$u_t = \nabla \cdot (k(u) \nabla u), \quad (3.20)$$

or

$$u_t - k(u) \Delta u - k'(u) |\nabla u|^2 = 0. \quad (3.21)$$

The reckoning shows that the adjoint equation (1.18) to Eq. (3.21) is written

$$v_t + k(u) \Delta v = 0. \quad (3.22)$$

It is easy to verify the nonlinear self-adjointness by Definition 3.2. Namely, searching the solution of the adjoint equation (3.22) in the form $v = \varphi(t, x^1, \dots, x^n)$, one obtains

$$\varphi_t + k(u) \Delta \varphi = 0,$$

whence

$$\varphi_t = 0, \quad \Delta \varphi = 0.$$

We conclude that Eq. (3.21) is self-adjoint and that the substitution (3.3) is given by

$$v = \varphi(x^1, \dots, x^n), \quad (3.23)$$

where $\varphi(x^1, \dots, x^n)$ is any solution of the n -dimensional Laplace equation $\Delta \varphi = 0$.

3.4 Anisotropic nonlinear heat equation

3.4.1 Two-dimensional case

Consider the heat diffusion equation

$$u_t = (f(u)u_x)_x + (g(u)u_y)_y \quad (3.24)$$

in an anisotropic two-dimensional medium (see [14], vol. 1, Section 10.8) with arbitrary functions $f(u)$ and $g(u)$. The adjoint equation is

$$v_t + f(u)v_{xx} + g(u)v_{yy} = 0. \quad (3.25)$$

Using Definition 3.2 we obtain the following equations for nonlinear self-adjointness of Eq. (3.24):

$$\varphi_t = 0, \quad \varphi_{xx} = 0, \quad \varphi_{yy} = 0. \quad (3.26)$$

Integrating Eqs. (3.26) we obtain the following substitution (3.3):

$$v = C_1 xy + C_2 x + C_3 y + C_4. \quad (3.27)$$

3.4.2 Three-dimensional case

The three-dimensional anisotropic nonlinear heat diffusion equation has the following form (see [14], vol. 1, Section 10.9):

$$u_t = (f(u)u_x)_x + (g(u)u_y)_y + (h(u)u_z)_z. \quad (3.28)$$

Its adjoint equation is

$$v_t + f(u)v_{xx} + g(u)v_{yy} + h(u)v_{zz} = 0. \quad (3.29)$$

Eq. (3.28) is nonlinearly self-adjoint. In this case the substitution (3.27) is replaced by

$$v = C_1 xyz + C_2 xy + C_3 xz + C_4 yz + C_5 x + C_6 y + C_7 z + C_8. \quad (3.30)$$

3.5 Nonlinear wave equations

3.5.1 One-dimensional case

Consider the following one-dimensional nonlinear wave equation:

$$u_{tt} = (k(u)u_x)_x, \quad k(u) \neq 0, \quad (3.31)$$

or in the expanded form

$$u_{tt} - k(u)u_{xx} - k'(u)u_x^2 = 0. \quad (3.32)$$

The adjoint equation (1.18) to Eq. (3.31) is written

$$v_{tt} - k(u)v_{xx} = 0. \quad (3.33)$$

Proceeding as in Section 3.3.1 or applying Definition 3.2 to Eqs. (3.32), (3.33) by letting $v = \varphi(t, x)$, we obtain the following equations that guarantee the nonlinear self-adjointness of Eq. (3.31):

$$\varphi_{tt} = 0, \quad \varphi_{xx} = 0. \quad (3.34)$$

Integrating Eqs. (3.34) we obtain the following substitution:

$$v = C_1 tx + C_2 t + C_3 x + C_4. \quad (3.35)$$

3.5.2 Multi-dimensional case

The multi-dimensional version of Eq. (3.31) with $x = (x^1, \dots, x^\nu)$ is written

$$u_{tt} = \nabla \cdot (k(u)\nabla u), \quad (3.36)$$

or

$$u_{tt} - k(u)\Delta u - k'(u)|\nabla u|^2 = 0. \quad (3.37)$$

The adjoint equation is

$$v_{tt} - k(u)\Delta v = 0. \quad (3.38)$$

Using Definition 3.2 and searching the solution of the adjoint equation (3.38) in the form $v = \varphi(t, x^1, \dots, x^\nu)$, we obtain the equations

$$\varphi_{tt} = 0, \quad \Delta\varphi = 0.$$

Solving them we arrive at the following substitution (3.3):

$$v = a(x)t + b(x), \quad (3.39)$$

where $a(x)$ and $b(x)$ solve the ν -dimensional Laplace equation,

$$\Delta a(x^1, \dots, x^\nu) = 0, \quad \Delta b(x^1, \dots, x^\nu) = 0.$$

Hence Eq. (3.36) is nonlinearly self-adjoint.

3.5.3 Nonlinear vibration of membranes

Vibrations of a uniform membrane whose tension varies during deformations are described by the following Lagrangian:

$$L = \frac{1}{2} \left[u_t^2 - k(u)(u_x^2 + u_y^2) \right], \quad k'(u) \neq 0. \quad (3.40)$$

The corresponding Euler-Lagrange equation

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial u} - D_t \left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial u_t} \right) - D_x \left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial u_x} \right) - D_y \left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial u_y} \right) = 0$$

provides the nonlinear wave equation

$$u_{tt} = k(u)(u_{xx} + u_{yy}) + \frac{1}{2}k'(u)(u_x^2 + u_y^2). \quad (3.41)$$

Note that Eq. (3.41) differs from the two-dimensional nonlinear wave equation (3.37) by the coefficient 1/2. Let us find out if this difference affects self-adjointness.

By applying (3.2) to the formal Lagrangian of Eq. (3.41) we obtain:

$$F^* = v_{tt} - k(u)(v_{xx} + v_{yy}) - k'(u)(u_x v_x + u_y v_y + v u_{xx} + v u_{yy}) - \frac{v}{2} k''(u)(u_x^2 + u_y^2).$$

We take the substitution (3.3) together with the necessary derivatives (see Eqs. (3.16)):

$$\begin{aligned} v &= \varphi(t, x, y, u), & v_t &= \varphi_u u_t + \varphi_t, \\ v_x &= \varphi_u u_x + \varphi_x, & v_y &= \varphi_u u_y + \varphi_y, \\ v_{xx} &= \varphi_u u_{xx} + \varphi_{uu} u_x^2 + 2\varphi_{xu} u_x + \varphi_{xx}, \\ v_{yy} &= \varphi_u u_{yy} + \varphi_{uu} u_y^2 + 2\varphi_{yu} u_y + \varphi_{yy}, \\ v_{tt} &= \varphi_u u_{tt} + \varphi_{uu} u_t^2 + 2\varphi_{tu} u_t + \varphi_{tt}, \end{aligned} \tag{3.42}$$

and substitute the expressions (3.42) in the self-adjointness condition (3.5):

$$F^* \Big|_{v=\varphi} = \lambda [u_{tt} - k(u)(u_{xx} + u_{yy}) - \frac{1}{2} k'(u)(u_x^2 + u_y^2)].$$

Comparing the coefficients of u_{tt} we obtain $\lambda = \varphi_u$. Then we compare the coefficients of u_{xx} and obtain $\varphi k'(u) = 0$. This equation yields $\varphi = 0$ because $k'(u) \neq 0$. Thus, the condition (3.4) is not satisfied for the point-wise substitution (3.3). Further investigation of Eq. (3.41) for the nonlinear self-adjointness requires differential substitutions.

3.6 Anisotropic nonlinear wave equation

3.6.1 Two-dimensional case

The two-dimensional anisotropic nonlinear wave equation is (see [14], vol. 1, Section 12.6)

$$u_{tt} = (f(u)u_x)_x + (g(u)u_y)_y. \tag{3.43}$$

Its adjoint equation has the form

$$v_{tt} - f(u)v_{xx} - g(u)v_{yy} = 0. \tag{3.44}$$

Proceeding as in Section 3.4 we obtain the following equations that guarantee the self-adjointness of Eq. (3.43):

$$\varphi_{tt} = 0, \quad \varphi_{xx} = 0, \quad \varphi_{yy} = 0. \tag{3.45}$$

Integrating Eqs. (3.45) we obtain the following substitution (3.3):

$$v = C_1 txy + C_2 tx + C_3 ty + C_4 xy + C_5 t + C_6 x + C_7 y + C_8. \tag{3.46}$$

Remark 3.3. I provide here detailed calculations in integrating Eqs. (3.45). The general solution to the linear second-order equation $\varphi_{tt} = 0$ is given by

$$\varphi = A(x, y)t + B(x, y) \quad (3.47)$$

with arbitrary functions $A(x, y)$ and $B(x, y)$. Substituting this expression for φ in the second and third equations (3.45) and splitting with respect to t we obtain the following equations for $A(x, y)$ and $B(x, y)$:

$$\begin{aligned} A_{xx} &= 0, & A_{yy} &= 0, \\ B_{xx} &= 0, & B_{yy} &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Substituting the general solution

$$A = a_1(y)x + a_2(y)$$

of the equation $A_{xx} = 0$ in the equation $A_{yy} = 0$ and splitting with respect to x , we obtain $a_1' = 0$, $a_2'' = 0$, whence

$$a_1 = c_{11}y + c_{12}, \quad a_2 = c_{21}y + c_{22},$$

where c_{11}, \dots, c_{22} are arbitrary constants. Substituting these in the above expression for A we obtain

$$A = c_{11}xy + c_{12}x + c_{21}y + c_{22}.$$

Proceeding likewise with the equations for $B(x, y)$, we have

$$B = d_{11}xy + d_{12}x + d_{21}y + d_{22}$$

with arbitrary constant coefficients d_{11}, \dots, d_{22} . Finally, we substitute the resulting A and B in the expression (3.47) for φ and, changing the notation, arrive at (3.46).

3.6.2 Three-dimensional case

The three-dimensional anisotropic nonlinear wave equation

$$u_{tt} = (f(u)u_x)_x + (g(u)u_y)_y + (h(u)u_z)_z \quad (3.48)$$

has the following adjoint equation

$$v_{tt} - f(u)v_{xx} - g(u)v_{yy} - h(u)v_{zz} = 0. \quad (3.49)$$

In this case Eqs. (3.45) are replaced by

$$\varphi_{tt} = 0, \quad \varphi_{xx} = 0, \quad \varphi_{yy}, \quad \varphi_{zz} = 0$$

and yield the following substitution (3.3):

$$\begin{aligned} v &= C_1 txyz + C_2 txy + C_3 txz + C_4 tyz + C_5 tx + C_6 ty + C_7 tz \\ &+ C_8 xy + C_9 xz + C_{10} yz + C_{11} t + C_{12} x + C_{13} y + C_{14} z + C_{15}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.50)$$

3.7 Nonlinear self-adjointness and multipliers

The approach of this section is not used for constructing conservation laws. But it may be useful for other applications of the nonlinear self-adjointness.

Theorem 3.1. The differential equation (1.17),

$$F(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}) = 0, \quad (3.51)$$

is nonlinearly self-adjoint (Definition 3.1) if and only if it becomes strictly self-adjoint (Definition 1.2) upon rewriting in the equivalent form

$$\mu(x, u)F(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}) = 0, \quad \mu(x, u) \neq 0, \quad (3.52)$$

with an appropriate multiplier $\mu(x, u)$.

Proof. We will write the condition (3.5) for nonlinear self-adjointness of Eq. (3.51) in the form

$$\left. \frac{\delta(vF)}{\delta u} \right|_{v=\varphi(x,u)} = \lambda(x, u)F(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}). \quad (3.53)$$

Furthermore, invoking that the equations (3.52) and (3.51) are equivalent, we will write the condition (1.28) for strict self-adjointness of Eq. (3.52) in the form

$$\left. \frac{\delta(w\mu F)}{\delta u} \right|_{w=u} = \tilde{\lambda}(x, u)F(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}). \quad (3.54)$$

Since w is a dependent variable and $\mu = \mu(x, u)$ is a certain function of x, u , the variational derivative in the left-hand side of (3.54) can be written as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\delta(w\mu F)}{\delta u} &= w \frac{\partial \mu}{\partial u} F + \mu w \frac{\partial F}{\partial u} - D_i \left(\mu w \frac{\partial F}{\partial u_i} \right) + D_i D_j \left(\mu w \frac{\partial F}{\partial u_{ij}} \right) - \dots \\ &= w \frac{\partial \mu}{\partial u} F + \frac{\delta(vF)}{\delta u}, \end{aligned}$$

where v is the new dependent variable defined by

$$v = \mu(x, u)w. \quad (3.55)$$

is the new dependent variable instead of w . Now the left side of Eq. (3.54) is written

$$\left. \frac{\delta(w\mu F)}{\delta u} \right|_{w=u} = u \frac{\partial \mu}{\partial u} F + \left. \frac{\delta(vF)}{\delta u} \right|_{v=u\mu(x,u)}. \quad (3.56)$$

Let us assume that Eq. (3.51) is nonlinearly self-adjoint. Then Eq. (3.53) holds with a certain given function $\varphi(x, u)$. Therefore, we take the multiplier

$$\mu(x, u) = \frac{\varphi(x, u)}{u} \quad (3.57)$$

and reduce Eq. (3.56) to the following form:

$$\left. \frac{\delta(w\mu F)}{\delta u} \right|_{w=u} = \left(\lambda + \frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial u} - \frac{\varphi}{u} \right) F.$$

This proves that Eq. (3.54) holds with

$$\tilde{\lambda} = \frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial u} - \frac{\varphi}{u} + \lambda.$$

Hence, Eq. (3.52) with the multiplier μ given by (3.57) is strictly self-adjoint.

Let us assume now that Eq. (3.52) with a certain multiplier $\mu(x, u)$ is strictly self-adjoint. Then Eq. (3.54) holds. Therefore, if we take the function φ defined by (see (3.57))

$$\varphi(x, u) = u\mu(x, u), \quad (3.58)$$

Eq. (3.56) yields:

$$\left. \frac{\delta(vF)}{\delta u} \right|_{v=\varphi(x,u)} = \left(\tilde{\lambda} - u \frac{\partial \mu}{\partial u} \right) F.$$

It follows that Eq. (3.53) holds with

$$\lambda = \tilde{\lambda} - u \frac{\partial \mu}{\partial u}.$$

We conclude that Eq. (3.51) is nonlinearly self-adjoint, thus completing the proof.

Example 3.3. The multiplier (2.22) used in Example 2.3 and the function $\varphi = x^2$ that provides a solution of the adjoint equation (2.21) to the Kompaneets equation are related by Eq. (3.58).

Example 3.4. Let us consider the one-dimensional nonlinear wave equation (3.32),

$$u_{tt} - k(u)u_{xx} - k'(u)u_x^2 = 0.$$

If we substitute in (3.57) the function φ given by the right-hand side of (3.35) we will obtain the multiplier that maps Eq. (3.32) into the strictly self-adjoint equivalent form. For example, taking (3.35) with $C_1 = C_3 = C_4 = 0$, $C_2 = 1$ we obtain the multiplier

$$\mu = \frac{t}{u}.$$

The corresponding equivalent equation to Eq. (3.32) has the formal Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L} = \frac{tv}{u} [u_{tt} - k(u)u_{xx} - k'(u)u_x^2].$$

We have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} &= D_t^2 \left(\frac{tv}{u} \right) - \frac{tv}{u^2} u_{tt} - D_x^2 \left(\frac{tv}{u} k(u) \right) - \frac{tv}{u} k'(u) u_{xx} + \frac{tv}{u^2} k(u) u_{xx} \\ &+ 2D_x \left(\frac{tv}{u} k'(u) u_x \right) - \frac{tv}{u} k''(u) u_x^2 + \frac{tv}{u^2} k'(u) u_x^2. \end{aligned}$$

Letting here $v = u$ we see that the strict self-adjointness condition is satisfied in the following form:

$$\left. \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} \right|_{v=u} = -\frac{t}{u} [u_{tt} - k(u)u_{xx} - k'(u)u_x^2].$$

4 Generalized Kompaneets equation

4.1 Introduction

The equation

$$\frac{\partial n}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{x^2} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left[x^4 \left(\frac{\partial n}{\partial x} + n + n^2 \right) \right], \quad (4.1)$$

known as the Kompaneets equation or the *photon diffusion equation*, was derived independently by A.S. Kompaneets² [15] and R. Weymann [16]. They take as a starting point the kinetic equations for the distribution function of a photon gas³ and arrive, at certain idealized conditions, at Equation (4.1). This equation provides a mathematical model for describing the time development of the energy spectrum of a low energy homogeneous photon gas interacting with a rarefied electron gas via the Compton scattering. Here n is the density of the photon gas (photon number density), t is time and x is connected with the photon frequency ν by the formula

$$x = \frac{h\nu}{kT_e}, \quad (4.2)$$

where h is Planck's constant and kT_e is the *electron temperature* with the standard notation k for Boltzmann's constant. According to this notation, $h\nu$ has the meaning

²He mentions in his paper that the work has been done in 1950 and published in *Report N. 336* of the Institute of Chemical Physics of the USSR Acad. Sci.

³Weymann uses Dreicer's kinetic equation [17] for a photon gas interacting with a plasma which is slightly different from the equation used by Kompaneets.

of the *photon energy*. The nonrelativistic approximation is used, i.e. it is assumed that the electron temperatures satisfy the condition $kT_e \ll mc^2$, where m is the electron mass and c is the light velocity. The term *low energy photon gas* means that $h\nu \ll mc^2$.

The question arises if the idealized conditions assumed in deriving Eq. (4.1) may be satisfied in the real world. For discussions of theoretical and observational evidences for such possibility in astrophysical environments, for example in intergalactic gas, see e.g. [18], [19] and the references therein. See also the recent publication [20].

4.2 Discussion of self-adjointness of the Kompaneets equation

For unifying the notation, the dependent variable n in Eq. (4.1) will be denoted by u and Eq. (4.1) will be written further in the form

$$u_t = \frac{1}{x^2} D_x [x^4(u_x + u + u^2)]. \quad (4.3)$$

Writing it in the expanded form

$$u_t = x^2 u_{xx} + (x^2 + 4x + 2x^2 u) u_x + 4x(u + u^2), \quad (4.4)$$

we have the following formal Lagrangian for Eq. (4.3):

$$\mathcal{L} = v[-u_t + x^2 u_{xx} + (x^2 + 4x + 2x^2 u) u_x + 4x(u + u^2)].$$

Working out the variational derivative of this formal Lagrangian,

$$\frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} = D_t(v) + D_x^2(x^2 v) - D_x[(x^2 + 4x + 2x^2 u)v] + 2x^2 v u_x + 4x(1 + 2u)v,$$

we obtain the adjoint equation to Eq. (4.3):

$$\frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} \equiv v_t + x^2 v_{xx} - x^2(1 + 2u)v_x + 2(x + 2xu - 1)v = 0. \quad (4.5)$$

If $v = \varphi(u)$, then

$$v_t = \varphi'(u)u_t, \quad v_x = \varphi'(u)u_x, \quad v_{xx} = \varphi'(u)u_{xx} + \varphi''(u)u_x^2.$$

It follows that the quasi self-adjointness condition (1.36),

$$\left. \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} \right|_{v=\varphi(u)} = \lambda[-u_t + x^2 u_{xx} + (x^2 + 4x + 2x^2 u)u_x + 4x(u + u^2)],$$

is not satisfied.

Let us check if this condition is satisfied in the more general form (3.5):

$$\left. \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} \right|_{v=\varphi(t,x,u)} = \lambda[-u_t + x^2 u_{xx} + (x^2 + 4x + 2x^2 u)u_x + 4x(u + u^2)]. \quad (4.6)$$

In this case

$$\begin{aligned} v_t &= D_t[\varphi(t, x, u)] = \varphi_u u_t + \varphi_t, \\ v_x &= D_x[\varphi(t, x, u)] = \varphi_u u_x + \varphi_x, \\ v_{xx} &= D_x(v_x) = \varphi_u u_{xx} + \varphi_{uu} u_x^2 + 2\varphi_{xu} u_x + \varphi_{xx}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.7)$$

Inserting (4.7) in the expression for the variational derivative given by (4.5) and singling out in Eq. (4.6) the terms containing u_t and u_{xx} , we obtain the following equation:

$$\varphi_u [u_t + x^2 u_{xx}] = \lambda[-u_t + x^2 u_{xx}].$$

Since this equation should be satisfied identically in u_t and u_{xx} , it yields $\lambda = \varphi_u = 0$. Hence $\varphi = \varphi(t, x)$ and Eq. (4.6) becomes:

$$\varphi_t + x^2 \varphi_{xx} - x^2(1 + 2u)\varphi_x + 2(x + 2xu - 1)\varphi = 0. \quad (4.8)$$

This equation should be satisfied identically in t, x and u . Therefore we nullify the coefficient for u and obtain

$$x\varphi_x - 2\varphi = 0,$$

whence

$$\varphi(t, x) = c(t)x^2.$$

Substitution in Eq. (4.8) yields $c'(t) = 0$. Hence, $v = \varphi(t, x) = Cx^2$ with arbitrary constant C . Since $\lambda = 0$ in (4.6) and the adjoint equation (4.5) is linear and homogeneous in v , one can let $C = 1$. Thus, we have demonstrated the following statement.

Proposition 4.1. The adjoint equation (4.5) has the solution

$$v = x^2 \quad (4.9)$$

for any solution u of Equation (4.3). In another words, *the Kompaneets equation (4.3) is nonlinearly self-adjoint* with the substitution (3.3) given by (4.9).

Remark 4.1. The substitution (4.9) does not depend on u . The question arises on existence of a substitution $v = \varphi(t, x, u)$ involving u if we rewrite Eq. (4.3) in an equivalent form

$$\alpha(t, x, u)[-u_t + x^2 u_{xx} + (x^2 + 4x + 2x^2 u)u_x + 4x(u + u^2)] = 0 \quad (4.4')$$

with an appropriate multiplier $\alpha \neq 0$. This question is investigated in next section for a more general model.

4.3 The generalized model

In the original derivation of Eq. (4.1) the following more general equation appears accidentally (see [15], Eqs. (9), (10) and their discussion):

$$\frac{\partial n}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{g(x)} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left[g^2(x) \left(\frac{\partial n}{\partial x} + f(n) \right) \right] \quad (4.10)$$

with undetermined functions $f(u)$ and $g(x)$. Then, using a physical reasoning, Kompaneets takes $f(u) = n(1+n)$ and $g(x) = x^2$. This choice restricts the symmetry properties of the model significantly. Namely, Equation (4.1) has only the time-translational symmetry with the generator

$$X = \frac{\partial}{\partial t}. \quad (4.11)$$

The symmetry (4.11) provides only one invariant solution, namely the stationary solution $n = n(x)$ defined by the Riccati equation

$$\frac{dn}{dx} + n^2 + n = \frac{C}{x^4}.$$

The generalized model (4.10) can be used for extensions of symmetry properties via the methods of *preliminary group classification* [21, 22]. In this way, exact solutions known for particular approximations to the Kompaneets equation can be obtained. This may also lead to new approximations of the solutions by taking into account various inevitable perturbations of the idealized situation assumed in the Kompaneets model (4.1).

So, we will take with minor changes in notation the generalized model (4.10):

$$u_t = \frac{1}{h(x)} D_x \{ h^2(x) [u_x + f(u)] \}, \quad h'(x) \neq 0. \quad (4.12)$$

It is written in the expanded form as follows:

$$u_t = h(x)(u_{xx} + f'(u)u_x) + 2h'(x)(u_x + f(u)). \quad (4.13)$$

We will write Eq. (4.13) in the equivalent form similar to (4.4'):

$$\alpha(t, x, u) \left[-u_t + h(x)(u_{xx} + f'(u)u_x) + 2h'(x)(u_x + f(u)) \right] = 0, \quad (4.14)$$

where $\alpha \neq 0$. This provides the following formal Lagrangian:

$$\mathcal{L} = v \alpha(t, x, u) \left[-u_t + h(x)(u_{xx} + f'(u)u_x) + 2h'(x)(u_x + f(u)) \right], \quad (4.15)$$

where v is a new dependent variable. For this Lagrangian, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} &= D_t(v\alpha) + D_x^2[h(x)v\alpha] - D_x[h(x)f'(u)v\alpha + 2h'(x)v\alpha] \\ &\quad + h(x)f''(u)v\alpha u_x + 2h'(x)f'(u)v\alpha \\ &\quad + v\alpha_u [-u_t + h(x)(u_{xx} + f'(u)u_x) + 2h'(x)(u_x + f(u))]. \end{aligned}$$

The reckoning shows that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} &= D_t(v\alpha) + hD_x^2(v\alpha) - hf'D_x(v\alpha) + (h'f' - h'')v\alpha \\ &\quad + v\alpha_u [-u_t + (u_{xx} + f'u_x)h + 2(u_x + f)h']. \end{aligned} \quad (4.16)$$

Now we write the condition for the self-adjointness of Eq. (4.13) in the form

$$\left. \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} \right|_{v=\varphi(t,x,u)} = \lambda [-u_t + (u_{xx} + f'u_x)h + 2(u_x + f)h'] \quad (4.17)$$

with an undetermined coefficient λ . Substituting (4.16) in (4.17) we have:

$$\begin{aligned} &D_t(\varphi\alpha) + hD_x^2(\varphi\alpha) - hf'D_x(\varphi\alpha) + (h'f' - h'')\varphi\alpha \\ &\quad + \varphi\alpha_u [-u_t + (u_{xx} + f'u_x)h + 2(u_x + f)h'] \\ &= \lambda [-u_t + (u_{xx} + f'u_x)h + 2(u_x + f)h']. \end{aligned} \quad (4.18)$$

Here $\varphi = \varphi(t, x, u)$, $\alpha = \alpha(t, x, u)$ and consequently (see (4.7))

$$\begin{aligned} D_t(\varphi\alpha) &= (\varphi\alpha)_u u_t + (\varphi\alpha)_t, \\ D_x(\varphi\alpha) &= (\varphi\alpha)_u u_x + (\varphi\alpha)_x, \\ D_x^2(\varphi\alpha) &= (\varphi\alpha)_u u_{xx} + (\varphi\alpha)_{uu} u_x^2 + 2(\varphi\alpha)_{xu} u_x + (\varphi\alpha)_{xx}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.19)$$

We substitute (4.16) in Eq. (4.18), equate the coefficients for u_t in both sides of the resulting equation and obtain $(\varphi\alpha)_u - \varphi\alpha_u = -\lambda$. Hence,

$$\lambda = -\alpha\varphi_u.$$

Using this expression for λ and equating the coefficients for hu_{xx} in both sides of Eq. (4.18) we get $(\varphi\alpha)_u + \varphi\alpha_u = -\alpha\varphi_u$. It follows that $(\varphi\alpha)_u = 0$ and hence

$$\alpha\varphi = k(t, x).$$

Now Eq. (4.18) becomes:

$$k_t + h(x)k_{xx} - h''(x)k + f'(u)[h'(x)k - h(x)k_x] = 0.$$

If $f''(u) \neq 0$, the above equation splits into two equations:

$$h'(x)k - h(x)k_x = 0, \quad k_t + h(x)k_{xx} - h''(x)k.$$

The first of these equations yields $k(t, x) = c(t)h(x)$, and then the second equation shows that $c'(t) = 0$. Hence, $k = C h(x)$ with $C = \text{const}$. Letting $C = 1$, we have:

$$\alpha\varphi = h(x). \quad (4.20)$$

Eq. (4.20) can be satisfied by taking, e.g.

$$\alpha = \frac{h(x)}{u}, \quad \varphi = u. \quad (4.21)$$

Thus, we have proved the following statement.

Proposition 4.2. Eq. (4.12) written in the equivalent form

$$\frac{h(x)}{u} u_t = \frac{1}{u} D_x \{h^2(x)[u_x + f(u)]\} \quad (4.22)$$

is strictly self-adjoint. In another words, the adjoint equation to Eq. (4.22) coincides with (4.22) upon the substitution

$$v = u. \quad (4.23)$$

In particular, let us verify by direct calculations that the original equation (4.3) becomes strictly self-adjoint if we rewrite it in the equivalent form

$$\frac{x^2}{u} u_t = \frac{1}{u} D_x [x^4(u_x + u + u^2)]. \quad (4.24)$$

Eq. (4.24) reads

$$-\frac{x^2}{u} u_t + \frac{x^4}{u} u_{xx} + \left[(x^4 + 4x^3) \frac{1}{u} + 2x^4 \right] u_x + 4x^3(1 + u) = 0 \quad (4.25)$$

and has the formal Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L} = -x^2 \frac{v}{u} u_t + x^4 \frac{v}{u} u_{xx} + \left[(x^4 + 4x^3) \frac{v}{u} + 2x^4 v \right] u_x + 4x^3(v + uv).$$

Accordingly, the adjoint equation to Eq. (4.25) is written

$$\begin{aligned} D_t \left(x^2 \frac{v}{u} \right) + D_x^2 \left(x^4 \frac{v}{u} \right) - D_x \left[(x^4 + 4x^3) \frac{v}{u} + 2x^4 v \right] \\ + x^2 \frac{v}{u^2} u_t - x^4 \frac{v}{u^2} u_{xx} - (x^4 + 4x^3) \frac{v}{u^2} u_x + 4x^3 v = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Letting here $v = u$ one has $v/u = 1$ and after simple calculations arrives at Eq. (4.25).

5 Quasi self-adjoint reaction-diffusion models

Let us consider the one-dimensional reaction-diffusion model described by the following system (see, e.g. [23]):

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} &= f(u, v) + A \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\phi(u, v) \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \right), \\ \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} &= g(u, v) + B \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\psi(u, v) \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right).\end{aligned}\tag{5.1}$$

It is convenient to write Eqs. (5.1) in the form

$$\begin{aligned}D_t(u) &= AD_x^2(u) + D_x[\phi(u, v)D_x(v)] + f(u, v), \\ D_t(v) &= BD_x^2(v) + D_x[\psi(u, v)D_x(u)] + g(u, v).\end{aligned}\tag{5.2}$$

The total differentiations have the form

$$\begin{aligned}D_t &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + u_t \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + v_t \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + u_{tt} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_t} + u_{tx} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_x} + v_{tt} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t} + v_{tx} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_x} + \dots, \\ D_x &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + u_x \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + v_x \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + u_{tx} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_t} + u_{xx} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_x} + v_{tx} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t} + v_{xx} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_x} + \dots\end{aligned}\tag{5.3}$$

and Eqs. (5.2) are written

$$\begin{aligned}u_t &= Au_{xx} + \phi v_{xx} + [\phi_u u_x + \phi_v v_x] v_x + f, \\ v_t &= Bv_{xx} + \psi u_{xx} + [\psi_u u_x + \psi_v v_x] u_x + g.\end{aligned}\tag{5.4}$$

The formal Lagrangian for the system (5.4) is

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L} &= z(Au_{xx} - u_t + \phi v_{xx} + \phi_u u_x v_x + \phi_v v_x^2 + f) \\ &+ w(Bv_{xx} - v_t + \psi u_{xx} + \psi_u u_x^2 + \psi_v u_x v_x + g),\end{aligned}\tag{5.5}$$

where z and w are new dependent variables. Eqs. (1.8) are written:

$$\begin{aligned}F_1^* &= \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} = D_x^2 \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{xx}} \right) - D_t \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_t} \right) - D_x \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_x} \right) + \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u}, \\ F_2^* &= \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta v} = D_x^2 \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial v_{xx}} \right) - D_t \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial v_t} \right) - D_x \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial v_x} \right) + \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial v}.\end{aligned}$$

Substituting here the expression (5.5) for \mathcal{L} we obtain after simple calculations the following adjoint equations (3.2) to the system (5.4):

$$Az_{xx} + z_t + \psi_v v_x w_x - \phi_u v_x z_x + \psi w_{xx} + z f_u + w g_u = 0,\tag{5.6}$$

$$Bw_{xx} + w_t + \phi_u u_x z_x - \psi_v u_x w_x + \phi z_{xx} + z f_v + w g_v = 0. \quad (5.7)$$

Let us investigate the system (5.4) for quasi self-adjointness (Definition 1.3). We write the left-hand sides of Eqs. (5.6) and (5.7) as linear combinations of the left-hand sides of Eqs. (5.4):

$$\begin{aligned} & Az_{xx} + z_t + \psi_v v_x w_x - \phi_u v_x z_x + \psi w_{xx} + z f_u + w g_u \\ &= (Au_{xx} - u_t + \phi v_{xx} + \phi_u u_x v_x + \phi_v v_x^2 + f)P \\ &+ (Bv_{xx} - v_t + \psi u_{xx} + \psi_u u_x^2 + \psi_v u_x v_x + g)Q, \end{aligned} \quad (5.8)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & Bw_{xx} + w_t + \phi_u u_x z_x - \psi_v u_x w_x + \phi z_{xx} + z f_v + w g_v \\ &= (Au_{xx} - u_t + \phi v_{xx} + \phi_u u_x v_x + \phi_v v_x^2 + f)M \\ &+ (Bv_{xx} - v_t + \psi u_{xx} + \psi_u u_x^2 + \psi_v u_x v_x + g)N, \end{aligned} \quad (5.9)$$

where P, Q, M and N are undetermined coefficients. We write the substitution (1.42) in the form

$$z = Z(u, v), \quad w = W(u, v) \quad (5.10)$$

and insert in the left-hand sides of Eqs. (5.8)-(5.9) these expressions for z, w together with their derivatives

$$\begin{aligned} z_t &= Z_u u_t + Z_v v_t, \quad z_x = Z_u u_x + Z_v v_x, \\ z_{xx} &= Z_u u_{xx} + Z_v v_{xx} + Z_{uu} u_x^2 + 2Z_{uv} u_x v_x + Z_{vv} v_x^2, \\ w_t &= W_u u_t + W_v v_t, \quad w_x = W_u u_x + W_v v_x, \\ w_{xx} &= W_u u_{xx} + W_v v_{xx} + W_{uu} u_x^2 + 2W_{uv} u_x v_x + W_{vv} v_x^2. \end{aligned}$$

Equating the coefficients for u_t and v_t in both sides of Eqs. (5.8)-(5.9) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} P &= -Z_u, \quad Q = -Z_v, \\ N &= -W_v, \quad M = -W_u. \end{aligned} \quad (5.11)$$

Now we calculate the coefficients for u_{xx} and v_{xx} , take into account Eqs. (5.11) and arrive at the following equations:

$$\begin{aligned} 2AZ_u + \psi Z_v + \psi W_u &= 0, \\ (A + B)Z_v + \phi Z_u + \psi W_v &= 0, \\ 2BW_v + \phi Z_v + \psi W_u &= 0, \\ (A + B)W_u + \phi Z_u + \psi W_v &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (5.12)$$

Eqs. (5.12) provide a linear homogeneous algebraic equations for the quantities

$$Z_u, \quad Z_v, \quad W_u, \quad W_v$$

with the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2A & \psi & \psi & 0 \\ \phi & A+B & 0 & \psi \\ 0 & \phi & \phi & 2B \\ \phi & 0 & A+B & \psi \end{pmatrix}.$$

This matrix has the inverse because its determinant is equal to

$$4(A+B)^2(\phi\psi - AB)$$

and does not vanish in the case of arbitrary A, B, ϕ and ψ . Hence, Eqs. (5.12) yield:

$$Z_u = Z_v = W_u = W_v = 0. \quad (5.13)$$

It follows that $Z(u, v) = C_1$, $W(u, v) = C_2$. Thus, the substitution (1.42) has the form

$$z = C_1, \quad w = C_2 \quad (5.14)$$

with arbitrary constants C_1, C_2 . Then Eqs. (5.8)-(5.9) become

$$(C_1f + C_2g)_u = 0, \quad (C_1f + C_2g)_v = 0$$

and yield

$$\tilde{f} + \tilde{g} = C,$$

where $\tilde{f} = C_1f$, $\tilde{g} = C_2g$, and $C = \text{const}$. Since \tilde{f} and \tilde{g} , along with f and g , are arbitrary functions, we can omit the ‘‘tilde’’ and write

$$f + g = C. \quad (5.15)$$

Eq. (5.15) provides the necessary and sufficient condition for the quasi self-adjointness of the system (5.1). Thus, we have proved the following statement.

Theorem 5.1. The system (5.1) is quasi self-adjoint if and only if it has the form

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} &= f(u, v) + A \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\phi(u, v) \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \right), \\ \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} &= C - f(u, v) + B \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\psi(u, v) \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right), \end{aligned} \quad (5.16)$$

where $\phi(u, v)$, $\psi(u, v)$, $f(u, v)$ are arbitrary functions and A, B, C are arbitrary constants. The substitution (1.42) is given by (5.14).

Remark 5.1. If we replace (5.10) by the general substitution (3.3), i.e. take

$$z = Z(t, x, u, v), \quad w = W(t, x, u, v), \quad (5.17)$$

then Eqs. (5.14) will be replaced by

$$z = Z(t, x), \quad w = W(t, x), \quad (5.18)$$

with functions $Z(t, x)$, $W(t, x)$ satisfying the following equations:

$$(\psi_v W - \phi_u Z)_x = 0, \quad (5.19)$$

$$AZ_{xx} + Z_t + \psi W_{xx} + (fZ + gW)_u = 0, \quad (5.20)$$

$$BW_{xx} + W_t + \phi Z_{xx} + (fZ + gW)_v = 0.$$

6 A model of an irrigation system

Let us consider the second-order nonlinear partial differential equation

$$C(\psi)\psi_t = [K(\psi)\psi_x]_x + [K(\psi)(\psi_z - 1)]_z - S(\psi). \quad (6.1)$$

It serves as a mathematical model for investigating certain irrigation systems (see [14], vol. 2, Section 9.8 and the references therein). The dependent variable ψ denotes the soil moisture pressure head, $C(\psi)$ is the specific water capacity, $K(\psi)$ is the unsaturated hydraulic conductivity, $S(\psi)$ is a source term. The independent variables are the time t , the horizontal axis x and the vertical axis z which is taken to be positive downward.

The adjoint equation (3.2) to Eq. (6.1) has the form

$$C(\psi)v_t + K(\psi)[v_{xx} + v_{zz}] + K'(\psi)v_z - S'(\psi)v = 0. \quad (6.2)$$

It follows from (6.2) that Eq. (6.1) is not nonlinearly self-adjoint if $C(\psi)$, $K(\psi)$ and $S(\psi)$ are arbitrary functions. Indeed, using Definition 3.2 of the nonlinear self-adjointness and nullifying in (6.2) the term with $S'(\psi)$ we obtain $v = 0$. Hence, the condition (3.4) of the nonlinear self-adjointness is not satisfied.

However, Eq. (6.1) can be nonlinearly self-adjoint if there are certain relations between the functions $C(\psi)$, $K(\psi)$ and $S(\psi)$. For example, let us suppose that the specific water capacity $C(\psi)$ and the hydraulic conductivity $K(\psi)$ are arbitrary, but the source term $S(\psi)$ is related with $C(\psi)$ by the equation

$$S'(\psi) = aC(\psi), \quad a = \text{const}. \quad (6.3)$$

Then Eq. (6.2) becomes

$$C(\psi)[v_t - av] + K(\psi)[v_{xx} + v_{zz}] + K'(\psi)v_z = 0$$

and yields:

$$v_z = 0, \quad v_{xx} = 0, \quad v_t - av = 0. \quad (6.4)$$

We solve the first two equations (6.4) and obtain

$$v = p(t)x + q(t).$$

We substitute this in the third equation (6.4),

$$[p'(t) - ap(t)]x + q'(t) - aq(t) = 0,$$

split it with respect to x and obtain:

$$p'(t) - ap(t) = 0, \quad q'(t) - aq(t) = 0,$$

whence

$$p(t) = be^{at}, \quad q(t) = le^{at}, \quad b, l = \text{const.}$$

Thus, Eq. (6.1) satisfying the condition Eq. (6.3) is nonlinearly self-adjoint, and the substitution (3.3) has the form

$$v = (bx + l)e^{at}. \quad (6.5)$$

One can obtain various nonlinearly self-adjoint Equations (6.1) by considering other relations between $C(\psi)$, $K(\psi)$ and $S(\psi)$ different from (6.3).

PART 2

Construction of conservation laws using symmetries

7 Discussion of the operator identity

7.1 Operator identity and alternative proof of Noether's theorem

Let us discuss some consequences of the operator identity⁴

$$X + D_i(\xi^i) = W^\alpha \frac{\delta}{\delta u^\alpha} + D_i N^i. \quad (7.1)$$

Here

$$X = \xi^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} + \eta^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial u^\alpha} + \zeta_i^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial u_i^\alpha} + \zeta_{i_1 i_2}^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{i_1 i_2}^\alpha} + \dots, \quad (7.2)$$

$$W^\alpha = \eta^\alpha - \xi^j u_j^\alpha, \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, m, \quad (7.3)$$

$$\frac{\delta}{\delta u^\alpha} = \frac{\partial}{\partial u^\alpha} + \sum_{s=1}^{\infty} (-1)^s D_{i_1} \dots D_{i_s} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{i_1 \dots i_s}^\alpha}, \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, m, \quad (7.4)$$

and

$$N^i = \xi^i + W^\alpha \frac{\delta}{\delta u_i^\alpha} + \sum_{s=1}^{\infty} D_{i_1} \dots D_{i_s} (W^\alpha) \frac{\delta}{\delta u_{i_1 \dots i_s}^\alpha}, \quad i = 1, \dots, n, \quad (7.5)$$

where the Euler-Lagrange operators with respect to derivatives of u^α are obtained from (7.4) by replacing u^α by the corresponding derivatives, e.g.

$$\frac{\delta}{\delta u_i^\alpha} = \frac{\partial}{\partial u_i^\alpha} + \sum_{s=1}^{\infty} (-1)^s D_{j_1} \dots D_{j_s} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{i j_1 \dots j_s}^\alpha}. \quad (7.6)$$

The coefficients ξ^i , η^α in (7.2) are arbitrary *differential functions* (see Section 1.1) and the other coefficients are determined by the prolongation formulae

$$\zeta_i^\alpha = D_i(W^\alpha) + \xi^j u_{ij}^\alpha, \quad \zeta_{i_1 i_2}^\alpha = D_{i_1} D_{i_2} (W^\alpha) + \xi^j u_{j i_1 i_2}^\alpha, \dots \quad (7.7)$$

The derivation of Eq. (7.1) is essentially based on Eqs. (7.7).

⁴Recently I learned that the identity (7.1) was proved in [24]. Namely, Eq. (7.1) is the same (except for notation) as Eq. (19) from [24]. The operator identity (7.1) was rediscovered in [25] and used for simplifying the proof of Noether's theorem. Accordingly, Eq. (7.1) was called in [25] the Noether identity. See also [4], Section 8.4.

Recall that Noether's theorem, associating conservation laws with symmetries of differential equations obtained from variational principles, was originally proved by calculus of variations. The alternative proof of this theorem given in [25] (see also [10, 4]) is based on the identity (7.1) and is simple. Namely, let us consider the Euler-Lagrange equations

$$\frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u^\alpha} = 0, \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, m. \quad (7.8)$$

If we assume that the operator (7.2) is admitted by Eqs. (7.8) and that the variational integral

$$\int \mathcal{L}(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots) dx$$

is invariant under the transformations of the group with the generator X then the following equation holds:

$$X(\mathcal{L}) + D_i(\xi^i)\mathcal{L} = 0. \quad (7.9)$$

Therefore, if we act on \mathcal{L} by both sides of the identity (7.1),

$$X(\mathcal{L}) + D_i(\xi^i)\mathcal{L} = W^\alpha \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u^\alpha} + D_i[\mathbf{N}^i(\mathcal{L})],$$

and take into account Eqs. (7.8), (7.9), we see that the vector with the components

$$C^i = \mathbf{N}^i(\mathcal{L}), \quad i = 1, \dots, n, \quad (7.10)$$

satisfies the conservation equation

$$D_i(C^i)|_{(7.8)} = 0. \quad (7.11)$$

For practical applications, when we deal with low order Lagrangians \mathcal{L} , it is convenient to restrict the operator (7.5) on the derivatives involved in \mathcal{L} and write the expressions (7.10) in the expanded form

$$\begin{aligned} C^i = & \xi^i \mathcal{L} + W^\alpha \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_i^\alpha} - D_j \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ij}^\alpha} \right) + D_j D_k \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ijk}^\alpha} \right) - \dots \right] \\ & + D_j (W^\alpha) \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ij}^\alpha} - D_k \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ijk}^\alpha} \right) + \dots \right] + D_j D_k (W^\alpha) \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ijk}^\alpha} - \dots \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (7.12)$$

Thus, Noether's theorem can be formulated as follows.

Theorem 7.1. If the operator (7.2) is admitted by Eqs. (7.8) and satisfies the condition (7.9) of the invariance of the variational integral, then the vector (7.12) constructed by Eqs. (7.12) satisfies the conservation law (7.11).

Remark 7.1. The identity (7.1) is valid also in the case when the coefficients ξ^i , η^α of the operator X involve not only the *local variables* $x, u, u_{(1)}, u_{(2)}, \dots$ but also *nonlocal variables* (see Section 11.5). Accordingly, the formula (7.12) associates conserved vectors with *nonlocal symmetries* as well.

Remark 7.2. If the invariance condition (7.9) is replaced by the divergence condition

$$X(\mathcal{L}) + D_i(\xi^i)\mathcal{L} = D_i(B^i),$$

then the identity (7.1) leads to the conservation law (7.11) where the conserved vector (7.10) is replaced with

$$C^i = \mathbb{N}^i(\mathcal{L}) - B^i, \quad i = 1, \dots, n. \quad (7.13)$$

Remark 7.3. If we write the operator (7.2) in the equivalent form

$$X = W^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial u^\alpha} + \zeta_i^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial u_i^\alpha} + \zeta_{i_1 i_2}^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{i_1 i_2}^\alpha} + \dots, \quad (7.14)$$

then the prolongation formulae (7.7) become simpler:

$$\zeta_i^\alpha = D_i(W^\alpha), \quad \zeta_{i_1 i_2}^\alpha = D_{i_1} D_{i_2}(W^\alpha), \dots \quad (7.15)$$

7.2 Test for total derivative and for divergence

I recall here the well-known necessary and sufficient condition for a differential function to be divergence, or total derivative in the case of one independent variable.

One can easily derive from the definition (1.1) of the total differentiation D_i the following lemmas (see also [4], Section 8.4.1).

Lemma 7.1. The following infinite series of equations hold:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial u^\alpha} D_i &= D_i \frac{\partial}{\partial u^\alpha}, \\ D_j \frac{\partial}{\partial u_j^\alpha} D_i &= D_i \frac{\partial}{\partial u^\alpha} + D_i D_j \frac{\partial}{\partial u_j^\alpha}, \\ D_j D_k \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{jk}^\alpha} D_i &= D_i D_k \frac{\partial}{\partial u_k^\alpha} + D_i D_j D_k \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{jk}^\alpha}, \\ &\dots \end{aligned}$$

Lemma 7.2. The following operator identity holds for every i and α :

$$\frac{\delta}{\delta u^\alpha} D_i = 0.$$

Proof. Using Lemma 7.1 and manipulating with summation indices we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\delta}{\delta u^\alpha} D_i &= \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial u^\alpha} - D_j \frac{\partial}{\partial u_j^\alpha} + D_j D_k \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{jk}^\alpha} - D_j D_k D_l \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{jkl}^\alpha} + \dots \right) D_i \\ &= \frac{\partial}{\partial u^\alpha} D_i - D_i \frac{\partial}{\partial u^\alpha} - D_i D_j \frac{\partial}{\partial u_j^\alpha} + D_i D_k \frac{\partial}{\partial u_k^\alpha} + D_i D_j D_k \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{jk}^\alpha} \\ &\quad - D_i D_k D_l \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{kl}^\alpha} - \dots = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Proposition 7.1. A differential function $f(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}) \in \mathcal{A}$ is divergence,

$$f = D_i(h^i), \quad h^i(x, u, \dots, u_{(s-1)}) \in \mathcal{A}, \quad (7.16)$$

if and only if the following equations hold identically in $x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots$:

$$\frac{\delta f}{\delta u^\alpha} = 0, \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, m. \quad (7.17)$$

The statement that (7.16) implies (7.17) follows immediately from Lemma 7.2. For the proof of the inverse statement that (7.17) implies (7.16), see [26], Chapter 4, § 3.5, and [24]. See also [4], Section 8.4.1.

We will use Proposition 7.1 also in the particular case of one independent variable x and one dependent variable $u = y$. Then it is formulated as follows.

Proposition 7.2. A differential function $f(x, y, y', \dots, y^{(s)}) \in \mathcal{A}$ is the total derivative,

$$f = D_x(g), \quad g(x, y, y', \dots, y^{(s-1)}) \in \mathcal{A}, \quad (7.18)$$

if and only if the following equation holds identically in x, y, y', \dots :

$$\frac{\delta f}{\delta y} = 0. \quad (7.19)$$

Here $\delta f / \delta y$ is the Euler-Lagrange operator (7.6):

$$\frac{\delta}{\delta y} = \frac{\partial}{\partial y} - D_x \frac{\partial}{\partial y'} + D_x^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial y''} - D_x^3 \frac{\partial}{\partial y'''} + \dots. \quad (7.20)$$

7.3 Adjoint equation to linear ODE

Let us consider an arbitrary s th-order linear ordinary differential operator

$$L[y] = a_0 y^{(s)} + a_1 y^{(s-1)} + \dots + a_{s-2} y'' + a_{s-1} y' + a_s y, \quad (7.21)$$

where $a_i = a_i(x)$. We know from Section 1.5 that the adjoint operator to (7.21) can be calculated by using Eq. (1.8). I give here the independent proof based on the operator identity (7.1).

Proposition 7.3. The adjoint operator to (7.21) can be calculated by the formula

$$L^*[z] = \frac{\delta(zL[y])}{\delta y}. \quad (7.22)$$

Proof. Let

$$X = w \frac{\partial}{\partial y} + w' \frac{\partial}{\partial y'} + w'' \frac{\partial}{\partial y''} + \dots \quad (7.23)$$

be the operator (7.14) with one independent variable x and one dependent variable $u = y$, where the prolongation formulae (7.15) are written using the notation

$$w' = D_x(w), \quad w'' = D_x^2(w), \dots \quad (7.24)$$

In this notation the operator (7.5) is written

$$\mathbf{N} = w \frac{\delta}{\delta y'} + w' \frac{\delta}{\delta y''} + w'' \frac{\delta}{\delta y'''} + \dots$$

Having in mind its application to the differential function $L[y]$ given by (7.21) we consider the following restricted form of \mathbf{N} :

$$\mathbf{N} = w \frac{\delta}{\delta y'} + w' \frac{\delta}{\delta y''} + \dots + w^{(s-1)} \frac{\delta}{\delta y^{(s)}}. \quad (7.25)$$

The identity (7.1) has the form

$$X = w \frac{\delta}{\delta y} + D_x \mathbf{N}. \quad (7.26)$$

We act by both sides of this identity on $zL[y]$, where z is a new dependent variable:

$$X(zL[y]) = w \frac{\delta(zL[y])}{\delta y} + D_x \mathbf{N}(zL[y]). \quad (7.27)$$

Since the operator (7.23) does not act on the variables x and z , we have

$$X(zL[y]) = zX(L[y]). \quad (7.28)$$

Furthermore we note that

$$X(L[y]) = L[w]. \quad (7.29)$$

Inserting (7.28) and (7.29) in Eq. (7.27) we obtain

$$zL[w] - w \frac{\delta(zL[y])}{\delta y} = D_x(\Psi), \quad (7.30)$$

where Ψ is a quadratic form $\Psi = \Psi[w, z]$ defined by

$$\Psi = \mathbf{N}(zL[y]). \quad (7.31)$$

After replacing w with y Eq. (7.30) coincides with Eq. (1.3) for the adjoint operator,

$$zL[y] - yL^*[z] = D_x(\psi), \quad (7.32)$$

where $L^*[z]$ is given by the formula (7.22) and $\psi = \psi[y, z]$ is defined by

$$\psi[y, z] = \Psi[w, z]|_{w=y} \equiv \mathbf{N}(zL[y])|_{w=y}. \quad (7.33)$$

Remark 7.4. Let us find the explicit formula for ψ in Eq. (7.32) We write the operator \mathbf{N} given by Eq. (7.25) in the expanded form

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{N} = & w \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial y'} - D_x \frac{\partial}{\partial y''} + \cdots + (-D_x)^{s-1} \frac{\partial}{\partial y^{(s)}} \right] \\ & + w' \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial y''} - D_x \frac{\partial}{\partial y'''} + \cdots + (-D_x)^{s-2} \frac{\partial}{\partial y^{(s)}} \right] + \cdots \\ & + w^{(s-2)} \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial y^{(s-1)}} - D_x \frac{\partial}{\partial y^{(s)}} \right] + w^{(s-1)} \frac{\delta}{\delta y^{(s)}}, \end{aligned}$$

act on $zL[y]$ written in the form

$$zL[y] = a_s y z + a_{s-1} y' z + a_{s-2} y'' z + \cdots + a_1 y^{(s-1)} z + a_0 y^{(s)} z,$$

and obtain Ψ . We replace w with y in $\Psi = \Psi[w, z]$ and $\psi = \psi[y, z]$:

$$\begin{aligned} \psi[y, z] = & y [a_{s-1} z - (a_{s-2} z)' + \cdots + (-1)^{s-1} (a_0 z)^{(s-1)}] \\ & + y' [a_{s-2} z - (a_{s-3} z)' + \cdots + (-1)^{s-2} (a_0 z)^{(s-2)}] + \cdots \\ & + y^{(s-2)} [a_1 z - (a_0 z)'] + y^{(s-1)} a_0 z. \end{aligned} \quad (7.34)$$

The expression (7.34) is obtained in the classical literature using integration by parts (see, e.g. [27], Chapter 5, §4, Eq. (31')).

7.4 Conservation laws and integrating factors for linear ODEs

Consider an s th-order homogeneous linear ordinary differential equation

$$L[y] = 0, \quad (7.35)$$

where $L[y]$ is the operator defined by Eq. (7.21). If $L[y]$ is a total derivative,

$$L[y] = D_x (\psi(x, y, y', \dots, y^{(s-1)})), \quad (7.36)$$

Eq. (7.35) is written as a conservation law

$$D_x (\psi(x, y, y', \dots, y^{(s-1)})) = 0,$$

whence upon integration one obtains a linear equation of order $s - 1$:

$$\psi(x, y, y', \dots, y^{(s-1)}) = C_1. \quad (7.37)$$

We can also reduce the order of the non-homogeneous equation

$$L[y] = f(x) \quad (7.38)$$

by rewriting it in the the conservation form

$$D_x \left[\psi(x, y, y', \dots, y^{(s-1)}) - \int f(x) dx \right] = 0. \quad (7.39)$$

Integrating it once we obtain the non-homogeneous linear equation of order $s - 1$:

$$\psi(x, y, y', \dots, y^{(s-1)}) = C_1 + \int f(x) dx.$$

Example 7.1. Consider the second-order equation

$$y'' + y' \sin x + y \cos x = 0.$$

We have

$$y'' + y' \sin x + y \cos x = D_x(y' + y \sin x).$$

Therefore the second-order equation in question reduces to the first-order equation

$$y' + y \sin x = C_1.$$

Integrating the latter equation we obtain the general solution

$$y = \left[C_2 + C_1 \int e^{-\cos x} dx \right] e^{\cos x}$$

to our second-order equation. Dealing likewise with the non-homogeneous equation

$$y'' + y' \sin x + y \cos x = 2x$$

we obtain its general solution

$$y = \left[C_2 + \int (C_1 + x^2) e^{-\cos x} dx \right] e^{\cos x}.$$

If $L[y]$ in Eq. (7.35) is not a total derivative, one can find an appropriate factor $\phi(x) \neq 0$, called an *integrating factor*, such that $\phi(x)L[y]$ becomes a total derivative:

$$\phi(x)L[y] = D_x (\psi(x, y, y', \dots, y^{(s-1)})) . \quad (7.40)$$

A connection between integrating factors and the adjoint equations for linear equations is well known in the classical literature (see, e.g. [27], Chapter 5, §4). Proposition 7.2 gives a simple way to establish this connection and prove the following statement.

Proposition 7.4. A function $\phi(x)$ is an integrating factor for Eq. (7.35) if and only if

$$z = \phi(x), \quad \phi(x) \neq 0, \quad (7.41)$$

is a solution of the adjoint equation ⁵ to Eq. (7.35):

$$L^*[z] = 0. \quad (7.42)$$

Knowledge of a solution (7.41) to the adjoint equation (7.42) allows to reduce the order of Eq. (7.35) by integrating Eq. (7.40):

$$\psi(x, y, y', \dots, y^{(s-1)}) = C_1. \quad (7.43)$$

Here C_1 is an arbitrary constants and ψ defined according to Eqs. (7.31)-(7.32), i.e.

$$\psi = \mathbf{N}(zL[y])|_{w=y}. \quad (7.44)$$

Proof. If (7.41) is a solution of the adjoint equation (7.42), we substitute it in Eq. (7.32) and arrive at Eq. (7.40). Hence $\phi(x)$ is an integrating factor for Eq. (7.35). Conversely, if $\phi(x)$ is an integrating factor for Eq. (7.35), then Eq. (7.40) is satisfied. Now Proposition 7.2 yields

$$\frac{\delta(\phi(x)L[y])}{\delta y} = 0.$$

Hence (7.41) is a solution of the adjoint equation (7.42). Finally, Eq. (7.44) follows from (7.32).

Example 7.2. Let us apply the above approach to the first-order equation

$$y' + P(x)y = Q(x). \quad (7.45)$$

Here $L[y] = y' + P(x)y$. The adjoint equation (7.42) is written

$$z' - P(x)z = 0.$$

⁵This statement is applicable to nonlinear ODEs as well, see [28].

Solving it we obtain the integrating factor

$$z = e^{\int P(x)dx}.$$

Therefore we rewrite Eq. (7.45) in the equivalent form

$$[y' + P(x)y] e^{\int P(x)dx} = Q(x)e^{\int P(x)dx}, \quad (7.46)$$

and compute the function Ψ given by Eq. (7.31):

$$\Psi = \mathbf{N}(zL[y]) = w \frac{\partial}{\partial y'} [z(y' + P(x)y)] = wz = we^{\int P(x)dx}.$$

Eq. (7.44) yields

$$\psi = ye^{\int P(x)dx}. \quad (7.47)$$

Now we can take (7.46) instead of Eq. (7.38) and write it in the form (7.39) with ψ given by (7.47). Then we obtain

$$D_x \left[ye^{\int P(x)dx} - \int Q(x)e^{\int P(x)dx} dx \right] = 0,$$

whence

$$ye^{\int P(x)dx} = C_1 + \int Q(x)e^{\int P(x)dx} dx.$$

Solving the latter equation for y we obtain the general solution of Eq. (7.45):

$$y = \left[C_1 + \int Q(x)e^{\int P(x)dx} dx \right] e^{-\int P(x)dx}. \quad (7.48)$$

Example 7.3. Let us consider the second-order homogeneous equation

$$y'' + \frac{\sin x}{x^2} y' + \left(\frac{\cos x}{x^2} - \frac{\sin x}{x^3} \right) y = 0. \quad (7.49)$$

Its left-hand side does not satisfy the total derivative condition (7.19) because

$$\frac{\delta}{\delta y} \left[y'' + \frac{\sin x}{x^2} y' + \left(\frac{\cos x}{x^2} - \frac{\sin x}{x^3} \right) y \right] = \frac{\sin x}{x^2}.$$

Therefore we will apply Proposition 7.4. The adjoint equation to Eq. (7.49) is written

$$z'' - \frac{\sin x}{x^2} z' + \frac{\sin x}{x^3} z = 0.$$

We take its obvious solution $z = x$, substitute it in Eq. (7.31) and using (7.33) find

$$\Psi = \mathbf{N} \left[xy'' + \frac{\sin x}{x} y' + \left(\frac{\cos x}{x} - \frac{\sin x}{x^2} \right) y \right] = \frac{\sin x}{x} w - w + xw'.$$

Therefore Eq. (7.43) is written

$$xy' + \left(\frac{\sin x}{x} - 1 \right) y = C_1.$$

Integrating this first-order linear equation we obtain the general solution of Eq. (7.49):

$$y = \left(C_2 + C_1 \int \frac{1}{x^2} e^{\int \frac{\sin x}{x^2} dx} dx \right) x e^{-\int \frac{\sin x}{x^2} dx}. \quad (7.50)$$

7.5 Application of the operator identity to linear PDEs

Using the operator identity (7.1) one can easily extend the equations (7.32)-(7.33) for linear ODEs to linear partial differential equations and systems. Let us consider the second-order linear operator

$$L[u] = a^{ij}(x)u_{ij} + b^i(x)u_i + c(x)u \quad (7.51)$$

considered in Section 1.5, Remark 1.1. The adjoint operator is

$$L^*[v] \equiv \frac{\delta(vF[u])}{\delta u} = D_i D_j (a^{ij}v) - D_i (b^i v) + cv. \quad (7.52)$$

Let us take the operator identity (7.1),

$$X = W \frac{\delta}{\delta u} + D_i \mathbf{N}^i, \quad (7.53)$$

where X is the operator (7.14) with one dependent variable u ,

$$X = W \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + W_i \frac{\partial}{\partial u_i} + W_{ij} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{ij}},$$

and \mathbf{N}^i are the operators (7.5),

$$\mathbf{N}^i = W \frac{\delta}{\delta u_i} + W_j \frac{\delta}{\delta u_{ij}} = W \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial u_i} - D_j \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{ij}} \right] + W_j \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{ij}}.$$

We use above the notation $W_i = D_i(W)$, $W_{ij} = D_i D_j(W)$. Now we proceed as in Section 7.3. Namely, we act on $vL[u]$ by both sides of the identity (7.53),

$$X(vL[u]) = W \frac{\delta(vL[u])}{\delta u} + D_i \mathbf{N}^i(vL[u]),$$

take into account that X does not act on the variables x^i , v , and that $X(L[u]) = L[W]$, use Eq. (7.52) and obtain:

$$vL[W] - WL^*[v] = D_i \mathbf{N}^i(vL[u]).$$

Letting here $W = u$ we arrive at the following generalization of the equation (7.32):

$$vL[u] - uL^*[v] = D_i(\psi^i), \quad (7.54)$$

where ψ^i are defined as in (7.33)-(7.34):

$$\psi^i = \mathbf{N}^i(vL[u])|_{W=u} \equiv a^{ij}(x)[vu_i - uv_i] + [b^i(x) - D_i(a^{ij}(x))]uv. \quad (7.55)$$

7.6 Application of the operator identity to nonlinear equations

Let us apply the constructions of Section 7.5 to nonlinear equations (1.6),

$$F_\alpha(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}) = 0, \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, m. \quad (7.56)$$

We write the operator (7.14) in the form

$$X = W^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial u^\alpha} + W_i^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial u_i^\alpha} + W_{ij}^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{ij}^\alpha} + \dots,$$

where $W_i^\alpha = D_i(W^\alpha)$, $W_{ij}^\alpha = D_i D_j(W^\alpha), \dots$. Then the operator (7.5) is written

$$\mathbf{N}^i = W_j^\alpha \frac{\delta}{\delta u_i^\alpha} + W^\alpha \frac{\delta}{\delta u_{ij}^\alpha} + \dots.$$

We act on $v^\beta F_\beta$ by both sides of the operator identity (7.1)

$$X = W^\alpha \frac{\delta}{\delta u^\alpha} + D_i \mathbf{N}^i,$$

denote by $F_\alpha^*[v]$ the adjoint operator defined by Eq. (1.8) and obtain

$$v^\beta \hat{F}_\beta[W] - W^\alpha F_\alpha^*[v] = D_i(\Psi^i), \quad (7.57)$$

where

$$\Psi^i = \mathbf{N}^i(v^\beta F_\beta)$$

and $\hat{F}_\beta[W]$ is the *linear approximation* to F_β defined by (see also Section 1.3)

$$\hat{F}_\beta[W] = X(F_\beta) \equiv W^\alpha \frac{\partial F_\beta}{\partial u^\alpha} + W_i^\alpha \frac{\partial F_\beta}{\partial u_i^\alpha} + W_{ij}^\alpha \frac{\partial F_\beta}{\partial u_{ij}^\alpha} + \dots.$$

Remark 7.5. Eq. (7.57) shows that $F_\alpha^*[v] = \hat{F}_\beta^*[W]$, i.e. the adjoint operator F_α^* to *nonlinear* Eqs. (7.56) is the usual adjoint operator \hat{F}_β^* to the *linear* operator $\hat{F}_\beta[W]$ (see also [29]). But the *linear self-adjointness* of $\hat{F}_\beta[W]$ is not identical with the *nonlinear self-adjointness* of Eqs. (7.56). For example, the KdV equation $F \equiv u_t - u_{xxx} - uu_x = 0$ is nonlinearly self-adjoint (see Example 1.2 in Section 1.6). But its linear approximation $\hat{F}[W] = W_t - W_{xxx} - uW_x - W u_x$ is not a self-adjoint linear operator. Moreover, *all linear equations are nonlinearly self-adjoint*.

8 Conservation laws: Generalities and explicit formula

8.1 Preliminaries

Let us consider a system of \bar{m} differential equations

$$F_{\bar{\alpha}}(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}) = 0, \quad \bar{\alpha} = 1, \dots, \bar{m}, \quad (8.1)$$

with m dependent variables u^1, \dots, u^m and n independent variables x^1, \dots, x^n .

A conservation law for Eqs. (8.1) is written

$$[D_i(C^i)]_{(8.1)} = 0. \quad (8.2)$$

The subscript $|_{(8.1)}$ means that the left-hand side of (8.2) is restricted on the solutions of Eqs. (8.1). In practical calculations this restriction can be achieved by solving Eqs. (8.1) with respect to certain derivatives of u and eliminating these derivatives from the left-hand side of (8.2). For example, if (8.1) is an evolution equation

$$u_t = \Phi(t, x, u, u_x, u_{xx}),$$

the restriction $|_{(8.1)}$ can be understood as the elimination of u_t . The n -dimensional vector

$$C = (C^1, \dots, C^m) \quad (8.3)$$

satisfying Eq. (8.2) is called a *conserved vector* for the system (8.1). If its components are functions $C^i = C^i(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots)$ of x, u and derivatives $u_{(1)}, \dots$ of a finite order, the conserved vector (8.3) is called a *local conserved vector*.

Since the conservation equation (8.2) is linear with respect to C^i , any linear combination with constant coefficients of a finite number of conserved vectors is again a conserved vector. It is obvious that if the divergence of a vector (8.3) vanishes identically, it is a conserved vector for any system of differential equations. This is a *trivial* conserved vectors for all differential equations. Another type of *trivial conserved vectors* for Eqs. (8.1) are provided by those vectors whose components C^i vanish on the solutions of the system (8.1). One ignores both types of trivial conserved vectors. In other words, conserved vectors (8.3) are simplified by considering them up to addition of these trivial conserved vectors.

The following less trivial operation with conserved vectors is particularly useful in practice. Let

$$C^1|_{(8.1)} = \tilde{C}^1 + D_2(H^2) + \dots + D_n(H^n) \quad (8.4)$$

the conserved vector (8.3) can be replaced with the equivalent conserved vector

$$\tilde{C} = (\tilde{C}^1, \tilde{C}^2, \dots, \tilde{C}^m) = 0 \quad (8.5)$$

with the components

$$\tilde{C}^1, \quad \tilde{C}^2 = C^2 + D_1(H^2), \dots, \quad \tilde{C}^n = C^n + D_1(H^n). \quad (8.6)$$

The passage from (8.3) to the vector (8.5) is based on the commutativity of the total differentiations. Namely, we have

$$D_1 D_2(H^2) = D_2 D_1(H^2), \quad D_1 D_n(H^n) = D_n D_1(H^n),$$

and therefore the conservation equation (8.2) for the vector (8.3) is equivalent to the conservation equation

$$\left[D_i(\tilde{C}^i) \right]_{(8.1)} = 0$$

for the vector (8.5). If $n \geq 3$, the simplification (8.6) of the conserved vector can be iterated: if \tilde{C}^2 contains the terms

$$D_3(\tilde{H}^3) + \dots + D_n(\tilde{H}^n)$$

one can subtract them from \tilde{C}^2 and add to $\tilde{C}^3, \dots, \tilde{C}^n$ the corresponding terms

$$D_2(\tilde{H}^3), \dots, D_2(\tilde{H}^n).$$

Note that the conservation law (8.2) for Eqs. (8.1) can be written in the form

$$D_i(C^i) = \mu^{\bar{\alpha}} F_{\bar{\alpha}}(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}) \quad (8.7)$$

with undetermined coefficients $\mu^{\bar{\alpha}} = \mu^{\bar{\alpha}}(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots)$ depending on a finite number of variables $x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots$. If C^i depend on higher-order derivatives, Eq. (8.7) is replaced with

$$D_i(C^i) = \mu^{\bar{\alpha}} F_{\bar{\alpha}} + \mu^{i\bar{\alpha}} D_i(F_{\bar{\alpha}}) + \mu^{ij\bar{\alpha}} D_i D_j(F_{\bar{\alpha}}) + \dots \quad (8.8)$$

It is manifest from Eq. (8.7) or Eq. (8.8) that the total differentiations of a conserved vector (8.3) provide again conserved vectors. Therefore, e.g. the vector

$$D_1(C) = (D_1(C^1), \dots, D_1(C^n)) \quad (8.9)$$

obtained from a known vector (8.3) is not considered as a new conserved vector.

If one of the independent variables is time, e.g. $x^1 = t$, then the conservation equation (8.2) is often written, using the divergence theorem, in the integral form

$$\frac{d}{dt} \int_{\mathbf{R}^{n-1}} C^1 dx^2 \dots dx^n = 0. \quad (8.10)$$

But the differential form (8.2) of conservation laws carries, in general, more information than the integral form (8.10). Using the integral form (8.10) one may even

lose some nontrivial conservation laws. As an example, consider the two-dimensional Boussinesq equations

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta\psi_t - g\rho_x - fv_z &= \psi_x\Delta\psi_z - \psi_z\Delta\psi_x, \\ v_t + f\psi_z &= \psi_xv_z - \psi_zv_x, \\ \rho_t + \frac{N^2}{g}\psi_x &= \psi_x\rho_z - \psi_z\rho_x\end{aligned}\tag{8.11}$$

used in geophysical fluid dynamics for investigating uniformly stratified incompressible fluid flows in the ocean. Here Δ is the two-dimensional Laplacian,

$$\Delta = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2},$$

and ψ is the stream function so that the x, z - components u, w of the velocity (u, v, w) of the fluid are given by

$$u = \psi_z, \quad w = -\psi_x.\tag{8.12}$$

Eqs. (8.11) involve the physical constants: g is the gravitational acceleration, f is the Coriolis parameter, and N is responsible for the density stratification of the fluid. Each equation of the system (8.11) has the conservation form (8.2), namely

$$\begin{aligned}D_t(\Delta\psi) + D_x(-g\rho + \psi_z\Delta\psi) + D_z(-fv - \psi_x\Delta\psi) &= 0, \\ D_t(v) + D_x(v\psi_z) + D_z(f\psi - v\psi_x) &= 0, \\ D_t(\rho) + D_x\left(\frac{N^2}{g}\psi + \rho\psi_z\right) + D_z(-\rho\psi_x) &= 0.\end{aligned}\tag{8.13}$$

In the integral form (8.10) these conservation laws are written

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dt} \iint \Delta\psi \, dx dz &= 0, \\ \frac{d}{dt} \iint v \, dx dz &= 0, \\ \frac{d}{dt} \iint \rho \, dx dz &= 0.\end{aligned}\tag{8.14}$$

We can rewrite the differential conservation equations (8.13) in an equivalent form by using the operations (8.4)-(8.6) of the conserved vectors. Namely, let us apply these operations to the first equation (8.13), i.e. to the conserved vector

$$C^1 = \Delta\psi, \quad C^2 = -g\rho + \psi_z\Delta\psi, \quad C^3 = -fv - \psi_x\Delta\psi.\tag{8.15}$$

Noting that

$$C^1 = D_x(\psi_x) + D_z(\psi_z).$$

and using the operations (8.4)-(8.6) we transform the vector (8.15) to the form

$$\tilde{C}^1 = 0, \quad \tilde{C}^2 = -g\rho + \psi_{tx} + \psi_z \Delta\psi, \quad \tilde{C}^3 = -fv + \psi_{tz} - \psi_x \Delta\psi. \quad (8.16)$$

The integral conservation equation (8.10) for the vector for (8.16) is trivial, $0 = 0$. Thus, after the transformation of the conserved vector (8.15) to the equivalent form (8.16) we have lost the first integral conservation law in (8.14). But it does not mean that the conserved vector (8.16) has no physical significance. Indeed, if write the differential conservation equation with the vector (8.16), we again obtain the first equation of the system (8.11):

$$D_x(\tilde{C}^2) + D_z(\tilde{C}^3) = \Delta\psi_t - g\rho_x - fv_z - \psi_x \Delta\psi_z + \psi_z \Delta\psi_x.$$

Let us assume that Eqs. (8.1) have a nontrivial local conserved vector satisfying Eq. (8.7). Then not all $\mu^{\bar{\beta}}$ vanish simultaneously due to non-triviality of the conserved vector. Furthermore, since $\mu^{\bar{\beta}} F_{\bar{\beta}}$ depends on x, u and a finite number of derivatives $u_{(1)}, u_{(2)}, \dots$ (i.e. it is a *differential function*) and has a divergence form, the following equations hold (for a detailed discussion see [4], Section 8.4.1):

$$\frac{\delta}{\delta\alpha} \left[\mu^{\bar{\beta}} F_{\bar{\beta}}(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}) \right] = 0, \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, m. \quad (8.17)$$

Note that Eqs. (8.17) are identical with Eqs. (3.2) where the differential substitution (3.9) is made with $\varphi^{\bar{\alpha}} = \mu^{\bar{\alpha}}$. Hence, the system (8.1) is nonlinearly self-adjoint. I formulate this simple observation as a theorem since it is useful in applications (see Section 11).

Theorem 8.1. Any system of differential equations (8.1) having a nontrivial local conserved vector satisfying Eq. (8.7) is nonlinearly self-adjoint.

8.2 Explicit formula for conserved vectors

Using Definition 3.1 of nonlinear self-adjointness and the theorem on conservation laws proved in [3] by using the operator identity (7.1), we obtain the explicit formula for constructing conservation laws associated with symmetries of any nonlinearly self-adjoint system of equations. The method is applicable independently on the number of equations in the system and the number of dependent variables. The result is as follows.

Theorem 8.2. Let the system of differential equations (8.1) be nonlinearly self-adjoint. Specifically, let the adjoint system (3.2) to (8.1) be satisfied for all solutions of Eqs. (8.1) upon a substitution (3.3),

$$v^{\bar{\alpha}} = \varphi^{\bar{\alpha}}(x, u), \quad \bar{\alpha} = 1, \dots, \bar{m}. \quad (8.18)$$

Then any Lie point, contact or Lie-Bäcklund symmetry

$$X = \xi^i(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots) \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} + \eta^\alpha(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots) \frac{\partial}{\partial u^\alpha}, \quad (8.19)$$

as well as a nonlocal symmetry of Eqs. (8.1) leads to a conservation law (8.2) constructed by the following formula:

$$\begin{aligned} C^i = & \xi^i \mathcal{L} + W^\alpha \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_i^\alpha} - D_j \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ij}^\alpha} \right) + D_j D_k \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ijk}^\alpha} \right) - \dots \right] \\ & + D_j (W^\alpha) \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ij}^\alpha} - D_k \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ijk}^\alpha} \right) + \dots \right] + D_j D_k (W^\alpha) \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ijk}^\alpha} - \dots \right], \end{aligned} \quad (8.20)$$

where

$$W^\alpha = \eta^\alpha - \xi^j u_j^\alpha \quad (8.21)$$

and \mathcal{L} is the *formal Lagrangian* for the system (8.1),

$$\mathcal{L} = v^{\bar{\beta}} F_{\bar{\beta}}. \quad (8.22)$$

In (8.20) the formal Lagrangian \mathcal{L} should be written in the symmetric form with respect to all mixed derivatives $u_{ij}^\alpha, u_{ijk}^\alpha, \dots$ and the “non-physical variables” v^α should be eliminated via Eqs. (8.18).

One can omit in (8.20) the term $\xi^i \mathcal{L}$ when it is convenient. This term provides a trivial conserved vector mentioned in Section 8.1 because \mathcal{L} vanishes on the solutions of Eqs. (8.1). Thus, the conserved vector (8.20) can be taken in the following form:

$$\begin{aligned} C^i = & W^\alpha \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_i^\alpha} - D_j \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ij}^\alpha} \right) + D_j D_k \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ijk}^\alpha} \right) - \dots \right] \\ & + D_j (W^\alpha) \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ij}^\alpha} - D_k \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ijk}^\alpha} \right) + \dots \right] + D_j D_k (W^\alpha) \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ijk}^\alpha} - \dots \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (8.23)$$

Remark 8.1. One can use Eqs. (8.23) for constructing conserved vectors even if the system (8.1) is not self-adjoint, in particular, if one cannot find explicit formulae (8.18) or (3.9) for point or differential substitutions, respectively. The resulting conserved vectors will be *nonlocal* in the sense that they involve the variables v connected with the physical variables u via differential equations, namely, adjoint equations to (8.1).

Remark 8.2. Theorem 8.2, unlike Nother’s theorem 7.1, does not require additional restrictions such as the invariance condition (7.9) or the divergence condition mentioned in Remark 7.2.

9 A nonlinearly self-adjoint irrigation system

Let us apply Theorem 8.2 to Eq. (6.1) satisfying the condition (6.3):

$$C(\psi)\psi_t = [K(\psi)\psi_x]_x + [K(\psi)(\psi_z - 1)]_z - S(\psi), \quad (9.1)$$

$$S'(\psi) = aC(\psi), \quad a = \text{const.} \quad (9.2)$$

The formal Lagrangian (8.22) for Eq. (9.1) has the form

$$\mathcal{L} = [-C(\psi)\psi_t + K(\psi)(\psi_{xx} + \psi_{zz}) + K'(\psi)(\psi_x^2 + \psi_z^2 - \psi_z) - S(\psi)]v. \quad (9.3)$$

We will use the substitution (6.5) of the particular form

$$v = e^{at}. \quad (9.4)$$

Denoting $t = x^1, x = x^2, z = x^3$ we write the conservation equation (8.2) in the form

$$D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2) + D_z(C^3) = 0. \quad (9.5)$$

This equation should be satisfied on the solutions of Eq. (9.1).

The formal Lagrangian (9.3) does not contain derivatives of order higher than two. Therefore in our case Eqs. (8.23) take the simple form

$$C^i = W \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \psi_i} - D_j \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \psi_{ij}} \right) \right] + D_j(W) \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \psi_{ij}} \quad (9.6)$$

and yield:

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= W \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \psi_t}, \\ C^2 &= W \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \psi_x} - D_x \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \psi_{xx}} \right) \right] + D_x(W) \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \psi_{xx}}, \\ C^3 &= W \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \psi_z} - D_z \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \psi_{zz}} \right) \right] + D_z(W) \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \psi_{zz}}. \end{aligned}$$

Substituting here the expression (9.3) for \mathcal{L} we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= -WC(\psi)v, \\ C^2 &= W[2K'(\psi)v\psi_x - D_x(K(\psi)v)] + D_x(W)K(\psi)v, \\ C^3 &= W[K'(\psi)v(2\psi_z - 1) - D_z(K(\psi)v)] + D_z(W)K(\psi)v, \end{aligned}$$

where v should be eliminated by means of the substitution (9.4). So, we have:

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= -WC(\psi)e^{at}, \\ C^2 &= [WK'(\psi)\psi_x + D_x(W)K(\psi)]e^{at}, \\ C^3 &= [WK'(\psi)(\psi_z - 1) + D_z(W)K(\psi)]e^{at}. \end{aligned} \quad (9.7)$$

Since Eq. (9.1) does not explicitly involve the independent variables t, x, z , it is invariant under the translations of these variables. Let us construct the conserved vector (9.7) corresponding to the time translation group with the generator

$$X = \frac{\partial}{\partial t}. \quad (9.8)$$

For this operator Eq. (8.21) yields

$$W = -\psi_t. \quad (9.9)$$

Substituting (9.9) in Eqs. (9.7) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= C(\psi)\psi_t e^{at}, \\ C^2 &= -[K'(\psi)\psi_t\psi_x + K(\psi)\psi_{tx}]e^{at}, \\ C^3 &= -[K'(\psi)\psi_t(\psi_z - 1) + K(\psi)\psi_{tz}]e^{at}. \end{aligned} \quad (9.10)$$

Now we replace in C^1 the term $C(\psi)\psi_t$ by the right-hand side of Eq. (9.1) to obtain:

$$C^1 = -S(\psi)e^{at} + D_x(K(\psi)\psi_x e^{at}) + D_z(K(\psi)(\psi_z - 1)e^{at}).$$

When we substitute this expression in the conservation equation (9.5), we can write

$$D_t(D_x(K(\psi)\psi_x e^{at})) = D_x(D_t(K(\psi)\psi_x e^{at})).$$

Therefore we can transfer the terms $D_x(\dots)$ and $D_z(\dots)$ from C^1 to C^2 and C^3 , respectively (see (8.6)). Thus, we rewrite the vector (9.10), changing its sign, as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= S(\psi)e^{at}, \\ C^2 &= [K'(\psi)\psi_t\psi_x + K(\psi)\psi_{tx}]e^{at} - D_t(K(\psi)\psi_x e^{at}), \\ C^3 &= [K'(\psi)\psi_t(\psi_z - 1) + K(\psi)\psi_{tz}]e^{at} - D_t(K(\psi)(\psi_z - 1)e^{at}). \end{aligned}$$

Working out the differentiation D_t in the last terms of C^2 and C^3 we finally arrive at the following vector:

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= S(\psi)e^{at}, \\ C^2 &= aK(\psi)\psi_x e^{at}, \\ C^3 &= aK(\psi)(\psi_z - 1)e^{at}. \end{aligned} \quad (9.11)$$

The reckoning shows that the vector (9.11) satisfies the conservation equation (9.5) due to the condition (9.2). Note that C^1 is the *density* of the conserved vector (9.11).

The use of the general substitution (6.5) instead of its particular case (9.4) leads to the conserved vector with the density

$$C^1 = S(\psi)(bx + l)e^{at}.$$

This approach opens a new possibility to find a variety of conservation laws for the irrigation model (6.1) by considering other self-adjoint cases of the model and using the extensions of symmetry Lie algebras (see [14], vol. 2, Section 9.8).

10 Utilization of differential substitutions

10.1 Equation $u_{xy} = \sin u$

We return to Section 3.2 and calculate the conservation laws for Eq. (3.11),

$$u_{xy} = \sin u, \quad (10.1)$$

using the differential substitution (3.12),

$$v = A_1[xu_x - yu_y] + A_2u_x + A_3u_y, \quad (10.2)$$

and the admitted three-dimensional Lie algebra with the basis

$$X_1 = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, \quad X_2 = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, \quad X_3 = x\frac{\partial}{\partial x} - y\frac{\partial}{\partial y}. \quad (10.3)$$

The conservation equation for Eq. (10.1) will be written in the form

$$D_x(C^1) + D_y(C^2) = 0.$$

We write the formal Lagrangian for Eq. (10.1) in the symmetric form

$$\mathcal{L} = \left(\frac{1}{2}u_{xy} + \frac{1}{2}u_{yx} - \sin u \right) v. \quad (10.4)$$

Eqs. (8.23) yield:

$$C^1 = \frac{1}{2}D_y(W)v - \frac{1}{2}Wv_y, \quad C^2 = \frac{1}{2}D_x(W)v - \frac{1}{2}Wv_x. \quad (10.5)$$

where we have to eliminate the variable v via the differential substitution (10.2).

Substituting in (10.5) $W = -u_x$ corresponding to the operator X_1 from (10.3), replacing v with (10.2) and u_{xy} with $\sin u$, then transferring the terms of the form $D_y(\dots)$ from C^1 to C^2 (see the simplification (8.6)) we obtain:

$$C^1 = A_1 \cos u, \quad C^2 = \frac{1}{2}A_1u_x^2.$$

We let $A_1 = 1$ and conclude that the application of Theorem 8.2 to the symmetry X_1 yields the conserved vector

$$C^1 = \cos u, \quad C^2 = \frac{1}{2}u_x^2. \quad (10.6)$$

The similar calculations with the operator X_2 from (10.3) lead to the conserved vector

$$C^1 = \frac{1}{2}u_y^2, \quad C^2 = \cos u. \quad (10.7)$$

The third symmetry, X_3 from (10.3), does not lead to a new conserved vector. Indeed, in this case $W = yu_y - xu_x$. Substituting it in the first formula (10.5) we obtain after simple calculations

$$C^1 = \frac{1}{2}A_3u_y^2 - A_2 \cos u + D_y \left[(A_2y + A_3x) \left(\frac{1}{2}u_xu_y + \cos u \right) \right].$$

Hence, upon transferring the term $D_y(\dots)$ from C^1 to C^2 the resulting C^1 will be a linear combination with constant coefficients of the components C^1 of the conserved vectors (10.6) and (10.7). The same will be true for C^2 . Therefore the conserved vector provided by the symmetry X_3 will be a linear combination with constant coefficients of the conserved vectors (10.6) and (10.7).

One can also use the Noether theorem because Eq. (10.1) has the classical Lagrangian, namely

$$L = -\frac{1}{2}u_xu_y + \cos u. \quad (10.8)$$

Then the symmetries X_1 and X_2 provide again the conserved vectors (10.6) and (10.7), respectively. But now we obtain one more conserved vector using X_3 , namely

$$C^1 = x \cos u - \frac{y}{2}u_y^2, \quad C^2 = \frac{x}{2}u_x^2 - y \cos u. \quad (10.9)$$

10.2 Short pulse equation

The differential equation (up to notation and appropriate scaling the physical variables)

$$D_t D_x(u) = u + \frac{1}{6} D_x^2(u^3) \quad (10.10)$$

was suggested in [30] (see there Eq. (11), also [31]) as a mathematical model for the propagation of ultra-short light pulses in media with nonlinearities, e.g. in silica fibers. The mathematical model is derived in [30] by considering the propagation of linearly polarized light in a one-dimensional medium and assuming that the light propagates in the infrared range. The final step in construction of the model is based on the method of multiple scales.

Eq. (10.10) is connected with Eq. (10.1) by a non-point transformation which is constructed in [32] as a chain of differential substitutions (given also in [31] by Eqs. (2)). Using this connection, an exact solitary wave solution (a *pulse solution*) to Eq. (10.10) is constructed in [31]. One can also find in [32] a Lax pair and a recursion operator for Eq. (10.10).

Note that Eq. (10.10) does not have a conservation form. I will find a conservation law of Eq. (10.10) thus showing that it can be rewritten in a conservation form. A significance of this possibility is commonly known and is not discussed here.

We write the *short pulse equation* (10.10) in the expanded form

$$u_{xt} = u + \frac{1}{2}u^2u_{xx} + uu_x^2 \quad (10.11)$$

so that the formal Lagrangian is written

$$\mathcal{L} = v \left[u_{xt} - u - \frac{1}{2}u^2u_{xx} - uu_x^2 \right]. \quad (10.12)$$

Substituting (10.12) in (3.2) we obtain the following *adjoint equation* to Eq. (10.11):

$$v_{xt} = v + \frac{1}{2}u^2v_{xx}. \quad (10.13)$$

We first demonstrate the following statement.

Proposition 10.1. Eq. (10.10) is not nonlinearly self-adjoint with a substitution

$$v = \varphi(t, x, u) \quad (10.14)$$

but it is nonlinearly self-adjoint with the differential substitution

$$v = u_t - \frac{1}{2}u^2u_x. \quad (10.15)$$

Proof. We write the nonlinear self-adjointness condition (3.5),

$$\left[v_{xt} - v - \frac{1}{2}u^2v_{xx} \right]_{(10.14)} = \lambda \left[u_{xt} - u - \frac{1}{2}u^2u_{xx} - uu_x^2 \right],$$

substitute here the expression (10.14) for v and its derivatives

$$\begin{aligned} v_{xx} &= \varphi_u u_{xx} + \varphi_{uu} u_x^2 + 2\varphi_{xu} u_x + \varphi_{xx}, \\ v_{xt} &= \varphi_u u_{xt} + \varphi_{uu} u_x u_t + \varphi_{xu} u_t + \varphi_{tu} u_x + \varphi_{xt}, \end{aligned} \quad (10.16)$$

and first obtain $\lambda = \varphi_u$ by comparing the terms with the second-order derivatives of u . This reduces the nonlinear self-adjointness condition to the following equation:

$$\begin{aligned} &\varphi_{uu} u_x u_t + \varphi_{xu} u_t + \varphi_{tu} u_x + \varphi_{xt} - \varphi - \frac{1}{2}u^2(\varphi_{uu} u_x^2 + 2\varphi_{xu} u_x + \varphi_{xx}) \\ &= -\varphi_u [u + uu_x^2]. \end{aligned} \quad (10.17)$$

The terms with u_t in Eq. (10.17) yield $\varphi_{uu} = \varphi_{xu} = 0$. Then we take the term with u_x^2 and obtain $\varphi_u = 0$. Hence

$$\varphi = a(t, x).$$

Now Eq. (10.17) gives $a_{xx} = 0$, $a_{xt} - a = 0$, whence $a = 0$. Thus

$$\varphi = 0,$$

i.e. the substitution (10.14) is trivial. This proves the first part of Proposition 10.1. Its second part is proved by similar calculations with the substitution

$$v = \varphi(t, x, u, u_x, u_t).$$

I will not reproduce these rather lengthy calculations, but instead we will verify that the substitution (10.15) maps any solution of Eq. (10.1) into a solution of the adjoint equation (10.13). First we calculate

$$v_x = u_{xt} - \frac{1}{2}u^2u_{xx} - uu_x^2$$

and see that on the solutions of Eq. (10.1) we have $v_x = u$. Now we calculate other derivatives and verify that on the solutions of Eq. (10.1) the following equations hold:

$$v_x = u, \quad v_t = u_{tt} - \frac{1}{2}u^2u_{xt} - uu_xu_t, \quad v_{xt} = u_t, \quad v_{xx} = u_x. \quad (10.18)$$

It is easily seen that Eq. (10.13) is satisfied. Namely, using (10.15) and (10.18) we have:

$$v_{xt} - v - \frac{1}{2}u^2v_{xx} = u_t - \left(u_t - \frac{1}{2}u^2u_x\right) - \frac{1}{2}u^2u_x = 0.$$

The maximal Lie algebra of point symmetries of Eq. (10.10) is the three-dimensional algebra spanned by the operators

$$X_1 = \frac{\partial}{\partial t}, \quad X_2 = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, \quad X_3 = u \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + x \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - t \frac{\partial}{\partial t}. \quad (10.19)$$

Let us construct the conservation laws

$$D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2) = 0 \quad (10.20)$$

for the basis operators (10.19).

Since the formal Lagrangian (10.12) does not contain derivatives of order higher than two, Eqs. (8.23) are written (see (9.6))

$$C^i = W \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_i} - D_j \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ij}} \right) \right] + D_j(W) \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ij}}.$$

In our case we have:

$$C^1 = -W D_x \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{tx}} \right) + D_x(W) \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{tx}}, \quad (10.21)$$

$$C^2 = W \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_x} - D_t \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{xt}} \right) - D_x \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{xx}} \right) \right] + D_t(W) \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{xt}} + D_x(W) \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{xx}}.$$

Substituting in (10.21) the expression (10.12) for \mathcal{L} written in the symmetric form

$$\mathcal{L} = v \left[\frac{1}{2} u_{tx} + \frac{1}{2} u_{xt} - u - \frac{1}{2} u^2 u_{xx} - uu_x^2 \right] \quad (10.22)$$

we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= -\frac{1}{2} W v_x + \frac{1}{2} v D_x(W), \\ C^2 &= -W \left[uvu_x + \frac{1}{2} v_t - \frac{1}{2} u^2 v_x \right] + \frac{1}{2} v D_t(W) - \frac{1}{2} u^2 v D_x(W). \end{aligned} \quad (10.23)$$

Since v should be eliminated via the differential substitution (10.15), we further simplify this vector by replacing v_x with u according to the first equation (10.18) and obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= -\frac{1}{2} W u + \frac{1}{2} v D_x(W), \\ C^2 &= -W \left[uvu_x + \frac{1}{2} v_t - \frac{1}{2} u^3 \right] + \frac{1}{2} v D_t(W) - \frac{1}{2} u^2 v D_x(W), \end{aligned} \quad (10.24)$$

where v and v_t should be replaced with their values given in Eqs. (10.15), (10.18).

Let us construct the conserved vectors using the symmetries (10.19). Their commutators are

$$[X_1, X_3] = -X_1, \quad [X_2, X_3] = X_2.$$

Hence, according to [10], Section 22.4, the operator X_3 plays a distinguished role. Namely, the conserved vectors associated with X_1 and X_2 can be obtained from the conserved vector provided by X_3 using the adjoint actions of the operators X_1 and X_2 , respectively. Therefore we start with X_3 . Substituting in (10.24) the expression

$$W = u + tu_t - xu_x$$

corresponding to the symmetry X_3 , eliminating the terms of the form $D_x(A)$ from C^1 and adding them to C^2 in the form $D_t(A)$ according to the simplification (8.6), we obtain after routine calculations the following conserved vector:

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= u^2, \\ C^2 &= u^2 u_x u_t - u_t^2 - \frac{1}{4} u^4 - \frac{1}{4} u^4 u_x^2. \end{aligned} \quad (10.25)$$

The conservation equation (10.20) for the vector (10.28) holds in the form

$$D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2) = 2 \left(u_t - \frac{1}{2} u^2 u_x \right) \left(u + \frac{1}{2} u^2 u_{xx} + uu_x^2 - u_{xt} \right). \quad (10.26)$$

Let us turn now to the operators X_1 and X_2 from (10.19). To simplify the calculations it is useful to modify Eqs. (10.24) as follows. Noting that

$$vD_x(W) = D_x(vW) - Wv_x$$

we rewrite the vector (10.23) in the form

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= -Wv_x, \\ C^2 &= -W\left[uvu_x - \frac{1}{2}u^2v_x\right] + vD_t(W) - \frac{1}{2}u^2vD_x(W). \end{aligned}$$

Then (10.24) is replaced with

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= -uW, \\ C^2 &= -W\left[uvu_x - \frac{1}{2}u^3\right] + vD_t(W) - \frac{1}{2}u^2vD_x(W). \end{aligned} \tag{10.27}$$

Substituting in the first formula (10.27) to expression $W = -u_t$ corresponding the operator X_1 we obtain $C^1 = uu_t$. This is the time derivative of C^1 from (10.25). Hence the symmetry X_1 leads to a trivial conserved vector obtained from the vector (10.25) by the differentiation D_t , in accordance with [10]. Likewise, it is manifest from (10.27) that the operator X_2 leads to a trivial conserved vector obtained from the conserved vector (10.25) by the differentiation D_x . Thus we have demonstrated the following statement.

Proposition 10.2. The Lie point symmetries (10.19) of Eq. (10.11) yield one non-trivial conserved vector (10.25). Accordingly, the short pulse equation (10.11) can be written in the following conservation form:

$$D_t(u^2) + D_x\left(u^2u_xu_t - u_t^2 - \frac{1}{4}u^4 - \frac{1}{4}u^4u_x^2\right) = 0. \tag{10.28}$$

11 Gas dynamics

11.1 Classical symmetries and conservation laws

Let us consider the polytropic gasdynamic equations

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v}_t + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{v} + \frac{1}{\rho}\nabla p &= 0, \\ \rho_t + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla\rho + \rho\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} &= 0, \\ p_t + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla p + \gamma p\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} &= 0, \end{aligned} \tag{11.1}$$

where γ is a constant known as the polytropic (or adiabatic) exponent. The independent variables are the time and the space coordinates:

$$t, \quad \mathbf{x} = (x^1, \dots, x^n), \quad n \leq 3. \quad (11.2)$$

The dependent variables are the velocity, the density and the pressure:

$$\mathbf{v} = (v^1, \dots, v^n), \quad \rho, \quad p. \quad (11.3)$$

Eqs. (11.1) with arbitrary γ have the Lie algebra of point symmetries spanned by

$$\begin{aligned} X_0 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}, \quad X_i = \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}, \quad Y_0 = t \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + x^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i}, \quad Y_i = t \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} + \frac{\partial}{\partial v^i}, \\ X_{ij} &= x^j \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} - x^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^j} + v^j \frac{\partial}{\partial v^i} - v^i \frac{\partial}{\partial v^j}, \quad (i < j), \\ Z_0 &= \rho \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} + p \frac{\partial}{\partial p}, \quad Z_1 = t \frac{\partial}{\partial t} - v^i \frac{\partial}{\partial v^i} + 2\rho \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho}, \quad i, j = 1, \dots, n, \end{aligned} \quad (11.4)$$

and the following classical conservation laws:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt} \int_{\Omega(t)} \rho d\omega &= 0 && - \text{Conservation of mass} \\ \frac{d}{dt} \int_{\Omega(t)} \left(\frac{1}{2} \rho |\mathbf{v}|^2 + \frac{p}{\gamma - 1} \right) d\omega &= - \int_{S(t)} p \mathbf{v} \cdot \boldsymbol{\nu} dS && - \text{Energy} \\ \frac{d}{dt} \int_{\Omega(t)} \rho \mathbf{v} d\omega &= - \int_{S(t)} p \boldsymbol{\nu} dS && - \text{Momentum} \\ \frac{d}{dt} \int_{\Omega(t)} \rho (\mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{v}) d\omega &= - \int_{S(t)} p (\mathbf{x} \times \boldsymbol{\nu}) dS && - \text{Angular momentum} \\ \frac{d}{dt} \int_{\Omega(t)} \rho (t\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{x}) d\omega &= - \int_{S(t)} tp \boldsymbol{\nu} dS && - \text{Center-of-mass theorem.} \end{aligned}$$

The conservation laws are written in the integral form by using the standard symbols:

- $\Omega(t)$ - arbitrary n -dimensional volume, moving with fluid,
- $S(t)$ - boundary of the volume $\Omega(t)$,
- $\boldsymbol{\nu}$ - unit (outer) normal vector to the surface $S(t)$.

If we write the above conservation laws in the general form

$$\frac{d}{dt} \int_{\Omega(t)} T d\omega = - \int_{S(t)} (\boldsymbol{\chi} \cdot \boldsymbol{\nu}) dS, \quad (11.5)$$

then the differential form of these conservation laws will be

$$D_t(T) + \nabla \cdot (\chi + T\mathbf{v}) = 0. \quad (11.6)$$

11.2 Adjoint equations and self-adjointness when $n = 1$

Theorem 8.1 from Section 8.1 shows that the system of gasdynamic equations (11.1) is nonlinearly self-adjoint. Let us illustrate this statement in the one-dimensional case:

$$\begin{aligned} v_t + vv_x + \frac{1}{\rho} p_x &= 0, \\ \rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x &= 0, \\ p_t + vp_x + \gamma p v_x &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (11.7)$$

We write the formal Lagrangian in the form

$$\mathcal{L} = U \left(v_t + vv_x + \frac{1}{\rho} p_x \right) + R(\rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x) + P(p_t + vp_x + \gamma p v_x) \quad (11.8)$$

and obtain the following adjoint system for the new dependent variables U, R, P :

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta v} &\equiv -U_t - vU_x - \rho R_x + (1 - \gamma)Pp_x - \gamma p P_x = 0, \\ \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \rho} &\equiv -R_t - vR_x - \frac{1}{\rho^2} U p_x = 0, \\ \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta p} &\equiv -P_t - \frac{1}{\rho} U_x + \frac{1}{\rho^2} U \rho_x + (\gamma - 1)Pv_x - vP_x = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (11.9)$$

Let us take, e.g. the conservation of energy from Section 8.1. Then we have

$$T = \frac{1}{2} \rho v^2 + \frac{p}{\gamma - 1}, \quad \chi = pv,$$

and using the differential form (11.6) of the energy conservation we obtain the following equation (8.7):

$$\begin{aligned} D_t \left(\frac{1}{2} \rho v^2 + \frac{p}{\gamma - 1} \right) + D_x \left(\frac{1}{2} \rho v^3 + \frac{\gamma}{\gamma - 1} pv \right) \\ = \rho v \left(v_t + vv_x + \frac{1}{\rho} p_x \right) + \frac{v^2}{2} (\rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x) + \frac{1}{\gamma - 1} (p_t + vp_x + \gamma p v_x). \end{aligned} \quad (11.10)$$

Hence, the adjoint equations (11.9) are satisfied for all solutions of the gasdynamic equations (11.1) upon the substitution

$$U = \rho v, \quad R = \frac{v^2}{2}, \quad P = \frac{1}{\gamma - 1}. \quad (11.11)$$

This conclusion can be easily verified by the direct substitution of (11.11) in the adjoint system (11.9). Namely, we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \left. \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta v} \right|_{(11.11)} &= -\rho \left(v_t + v v_x + \frac{1}{\rho} p_x \right) - v(\rho_t + v \rho_x + \rho v_x), \\ \left. \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \rho} \right|_{(11.11)} &= -v \left(v_t + v v_x + \frac{1}{\rho} p_x \right), \\ \left. \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta p} \right|_{(11.11)} &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (11.12)$$

11.3 Adjoint system to equations (11.1) with $n \geq 2$

For gasdynamic equations (11.1) with two and three space variables x^i the formal Lagrangian (11.8) is replaced by

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L} = \mathbf{U} \cdot \left(\mathbf{v}_t + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{v} + \frac{1}{\rho} \nabla p \right) + R(\rho_t + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla \rho + \rho \nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}) \\ + P(p_t + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla p + \gamma p \nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}), \end{aligned} \quad (11.13)$$

where the vector $\mathbf{U} = (U^1, \dots, U^n)$ and the scalars R, P are new dependent variables. Using this formal Lagrangian, we obtain the following adjoint system instead of (11.9):

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \mathbf{v}} &\equiv -\mathbf{U}_t - (\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{U} + (\mathbf{U} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{v} - (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}) \mathbf{U} \\ &\quad - \rho \nabla R + (1 - \gamma) P \nabla p - \gamma p \nabla P = 0, \\ \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \rho} &\equiv -R_t - \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla R - \frac{1}{\rho^2} \mathbf{U} \cdot \nabla p = 0, \\ \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta p} &\equiv -P_t - \frac{1}{\rho} (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{U}) + \frac{1}{\rho^2} \mathbf{U} \cdot \nabla \rho + (\gamma - 1) P (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}) - \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla P = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (11.14)$$

The nonlinear self-adjointness of the system (11.1) can be demonstrated as in the one-dimensional case discussed in Section 11.2.

11.4 Application to nonlocal symmetries of the Chaplygin gas

The Chaplygin gas is described by the one-dimensional gasdynamic equations (11.7) with $\gamma = -1$:

$$\begin{aligned} v_t + v v_x + \frac{1}{\rho} p_x &= 0, \\ \rho_t + v \rho_x + \rho v_x &= 0, \\ p_t + v p_x - p v_x &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (11.15)$$

Eqs. (11.15) have the same maximal Lie algebra of Lie point symmetries as Eqs. (11.7) with arbitrary γ . This algebra is spanned by the symmetries (11.4) in the one-dimensional case, namely

$$\begin{aligned} X_1 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}, & X_2 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, & X_3 &= t \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial}{\partial v}, & X_4 &= t \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + x \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, \\ X_5 &= \rho \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} + p \frac{\partial}{\partial p}, & X_6 &= t \frac{\partial}{\partial t} - v \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + 2\rho \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho}. \end{aligned} \quad (11.16)$$

But the Chaplygin gas has more symmetries than an arbitrary one-dimensional polytropic gas upon rewriting it in Lagrange's variables obtained by replacing x and ρ with y and q , respectively, obtained by the following *nonlocal transformation*:

$$\tau = \int \rho dx, \quad q = \frac{1}{\rho}. \quad (11.17)$$

Then the system (11.15) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} q_t - v_\tau &= 0, \\ v_t + p_\tau &= 0, \\ p_t - \frac{p}{q} v_\tau &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (11.18)$$

and admits the 8-dimensional Lie algebra with the basis

$$\begin{aligned} Y_1 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}, & Y_2 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau}, & Y_3 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial v}, & Y_4 &= t \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \tau \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau}, \\ Y_5 &= \tau \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} + p \frac{\partial}{\partial p} - q \frac{\partial}{\partial q}, & Y_6 &= v \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + p \frac{\partial}{\partial p} + q \frac{\partial}{\partial q}, \\ Y_7 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial p} + \frac{q}{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial q}, & Y_8 &= t \frac{\partial}{\partial v} - y \frac{\partial}{\partial p} - \frac{yq}{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial q}. \end{aligned} \quad (11.19)$$

It is shown in [21] that the operators Y_7, Y_8 from (11.19) lead to the following *nonlocal symmetries* for Eqs. (11.15):

$$\begin{aligned} X_7 &= \sigma \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial}{\partial p} + \frac{\rho}{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho}, \\ X_8 &= \left(\frac{t^2}{2} + s \right) \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + t \frac{\partial}{\partial v} - \tau \frac{\partial}{\partial p} + \frac{\rho \tau}{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho}, \end{aligned} \quad (11.20)$$

where τ, s, σ are the following *nonlocal variables*:

$$\tau = \int \rho dx, \quad s = - \int \frac{\tau}{p} dx, \quad \sigma = - \int \frac{dx}{p}. \quad (11.21)$$

They can be equivalently defined by the compatible over-determined systems

$$\begin{aligned}\tau_x &= \rho, & \tau_t + v\tau_x &= 0, \\ s_x &= -\frac{\tau}{p}, & s_t + vs_x &= 0, \\ \sigma_x &= -\frac{1}{p}, & \sigma_t + v\sigma_x &= 0,\end{aligned}\tag{11.22}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned}\tau_x &= \rho, & \tau_t &= -v\rho, \\ s_x &= -\frac{\tau}{p}, & s_t &= \frac{v\tau}{p}, \\ \sigma_x &= -\frac{1}{p}, & \sigma_t &= \frac{v}{p}.\end{aligned}\tag{11.23}$$

Let us verify that the operator X_7 is admitted by Eqs. (11.15). Its first prolongation is obtained by applying the usual prolongation procedure and eliminating the partial derivatives σ_x and σ_t via Eqs. (11.23). It has the form

$$\begin{aligned}X_7 &= \sigma \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial}{\partial p} + \frac{\rho}{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} - \frac{v v_x}{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t} + \frac{v_x}{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_x} - \frac{v p_x}{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial p_t} + \frac{p_x}{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial p_x} \\ &+ \left(\frac{\rho_t}{p} - \frac{\rho p_t}{p^2} - \frac{v \rho_x}{p} \right) \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho_t} + \left(2 \frac{\rho_x}{p} - \frac{\rho p_x}{p^2} \right) \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho_x}.\end{aligned}\tag{11.24}$$

The calculation shows that the invariance condition is satisfied in the following form:

$$\begin{aligned}X_7 \left(v_t + v v_x + \frac{1}{\rho} p_x \right) &= 0, \\ X_7(\rho_t + v \rho_x + \rho v_x) &= \frac{1}{p} (\rho_t + v \rho_x + \rho v_x) - \frac{\rho}{p^2} (p_t + v p_x - p v_x), \\ X_7(p_t + v p_x - p v_x) &= 0.\end{aligned}$$

One can verify likewise that the invariance test for the operator X_8 is satisfied in the following form:

$$\begin{aligned}X_8 \left(v_t + v v_x + \frac{1}{\rho} p_x \right) &= 0, \\ X_8(\rho_t + v \rho_x + \rho v_x) &= \frac{\tau}{p} (\rho_t + v \rho_x + \rho v_x) - \frac{\rho \tau}{p^2} (p_t + v p_x - p v_x), \\ X_8(p_t + v p_x - p v_x) &= 0.\end{aligned}$$

The operators Y_1, \dots, Y_6 from (11.19) do not add to the operators (11.16) new symmetries of the system (11.15).

Thus, the Chaplygin gas described by Eqs. (11.15) admits the eight-dimensional vector space spanned by the operators (11.16) and (11.20). However this vector space is not a Lie algebra. Namely, the commutators of the dilation generators X_4, X_5, X_6 from (11.16) with the operators (11.20) are not linear combinations of the operators (11.16), (11.20) with constants coefficients. The reason is that the operators X_4, X_5, X_6 are not admitted by the differential equations (11.22) for the nonlocal variables τ, s, σ . Therefore I will extend the action of the dilation generators to τ, s, σ so that the extended operators will be admitted by Eqs. (11.22).

Let us take the operator X_4 . We write it in the extended form

$$X'_4 = t \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + x \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} + \beta \frac{\partial}{\partial s} + \mu \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma},$$

where α, β, μ are unknown functions of $t, x, v, \rho, p, \tau, s, \sigma$. Then we make the prolongation of X'_4 to the first-order partial derivatives of the nonlocal variables with respect to t and x by treating τ, s, σ as new dependent variables and obtain

$$\begin{aligned} X'_4 &= t \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + x \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} + \beta \frac{\partial}{\partial s} + \mu \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma} \\ &+ [D_t(\alpha) - \tau_t] \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau_t} + [D_x(\alpha) - \tau_x] \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau_x} \\ &+ [D_t(\beta) - s_t] \frac{\partial}{\partial s_t} + [D_x(\beta) - s_x] \frac{\partial}{\partial s_x} \\ &+ [D_t(\mu) - \sigma_t] \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma_t} + [D_x(\mu) - \sigma_x] \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma_x}. \end{aligned}$$

Now we require the invariance of Eqs. (11.22):

$$\begin{aligned} X'_4(\tau_x - \rho) &= 0, & X'_4(\tau_t + v\tau_x) &= 0, \\ X'_4\left(s_x + \frac{\tau}{p}\right) &= 0, & X'_4(s_t + vs_x) &= 0, \\ X'_4\left(\sigma_x + \frac{1}{p}\right) &= 0, & X'_4(\sigma_t + v\sigma_x) &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{11.25}$$

As usual, Eqs. (11.25) should be satisfied on the solutions of Eqs. (11.22). Let us solve the equations $X'_4(\tau_x - \rho) = 0$, $X'_4(\tau_t + v\tau_x) = 0$. They are written

$$[D_x(\alpha) - \tau_x]_{(11.22)} = 0, \quad [D_t(\alpha) - \tau_t + v(D_x(\alpha) - \tau_x)]_{(11.22)} = 0. \tag{11.26}$$

Since $\tau_x = D_x(\alpha)$, the first equation in (11.26) is satisfied if we take

$$\alpha = \tau$$

With this α the second equation in (11.26) is also satisfied because $\tau_t + v\tau_x = 0$. Now the first equation in the second line of Eqs. (11.25) becomes

$$\left[D_x(\beta) - s_x + \frac{\tau}{p} \right]_{(11.22)} = D_x(\beta) - 2s_x = 0$$

and yields

$$\beta = 2s.$$

The second equation in the second line of Eqs. (11.25) is also satisfied with this β . Applying the same approach to the third line of Eqs. (11.25) we obtain

$$\mu = \sigma.$$

After similar calculations with X_5 and X_6 we obtain the following extensions of the dilation generators:

$$\begin{aligned} X'_4 &= t \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + x \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \tau \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} + 2s \frac{\partial}{\partial s} + \sigma \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma}, \\ X'_5 &= \rho \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} + p \frac{\partial}{\partial p} + \tau \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} - \sigma \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma}, \\ X'_6 &= t \frac{\partial}{\partial t} - v \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + 2\rho \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} + 2\tau \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} + 2s \frac{\partial}{\partial s}. \end{aligned} \quad (11.27)$$

The operators (11.20), (11.27) together with the operators X_1, X_2, X_3 from (11.16) span the eight-dimensional Lie algebra L_8 admitted by Eqs. (11.15) and Eqs. (11.22). The algebra L_8 has the following commutator table:

	X_1	X_2	X_3	X'_4	X'_5	X'_6	X_7	X_8
X_1	0	0	X_2	X_1	0	X_1	0	X_3
X_2	0	0	0	X_2	0	0	0	0
X_3	$-X_2$	0	0	0	0	$-X_3$	0	0
X'_4	$-X_1$	$-X_2$	0	0	0	0	0	X_8
X'_5	0	0	0	0	0	0	$-X_7$	0
X'_6	$-X_1$	0	X_3	0	0	0	0	$2X_8$
X_7	0	0	0	0	X_7	0	0	0
X_8	$-X_3$	0	0	$-X_8$	0	$-2X_8$	0	0

Let us apply Theorem 8.2 to the nonlocal symmetries (11.20) of the Chaplygin gas. The formal Lagrangian (11.8) for Eqs. (11.15) has the form

$$\mathcal{L} = U\left(v_t + vv_x + \frac{1}{\rho}p_x\right) + R(\rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x) + P(p_t + vp_x - pv_x). \quad (11.28)$$

Accordingly, the adjoint system (11.9) for the Chaplygin gas is written

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\delta\mathcal{L}}{\delta v} &\equiv -U_t - vU_x - \rho R_x + 2Pp_x + pP_x = 0, \\ \frac{\delta\mathcal{L}}{\delta\rho} &\equiv -R_t - vR_x - \frac{1}{\rho^2}Up_x = 0, \\ \frac{\delta\mathcal{L}}{\delta p} &\equiv -P_t - \frac{1}{\rho}U_x + \frac{1}{\rho^2}U\rho_x - 2Pv_x - vP_x = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (11.29)$$

Let us proceed as in Section 11.2. Namely, let us first construct solutions to the adjoint system (11.29) by using the known conservation laws given in Section 8.1. Since the one-dimensional does not have the conservation of angular momentum, we use the conservation of mass, energy, momentum and center-of-mass and obtain the respective differential conservation equations (see the derivation of Eq. (11.10)):

$$D_t(\rho) + D_x(\rho v) = \rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x, \quad (11.30)$$

$$\begin{aligned} D_t(\rho v^2 - p) + D_x(pv + \rho v^3) &= 2\rho v\left(v_t + vv_x + \frac{1}{\rho}p_x\right) \\ &\quad + v^2(\rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x) - (p_t + vp_x - pv_x), \end{aligned} \quad (11.31)$$

$$\begin{aligned} D_t(\rho v) + D_x(p + \rho v^2) &= \rho\left(v_t + vv_x + \frac{1}{\rho}p_x\right) \\ &\quad + v(\rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x), \end{aligned} \quad (11.32)$$

$$\begin{aligned} D_t(tpv - x\rho) + D_x(tp + t\rho v^2 - x\rho v) \\ = t\rho\left(v_t + vv_x + \frac{1}{\rho}p_x\right) + (tv - x)(\rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x). \end{aligned} \quad (11.33)$$

Eqs. (11.30)- (11.33) give the following solutions to the adjoint equations (11.29):

$$U = 0, \quad R = 1, \quad P = 0, \quad (11.34)$$

$$U = 2\rho v, \quad R = v^2, \quad P = -1, \quad (11.35)$$

$$U = \rho, \quad R = v, \quad P = 0, \quad (11.36)$$

$$U = t\rho, \quad R = tv - x, \quad P = 0. \quad (11.37)$$

The formal Lagrangian (11.28) contains the derivatives only of the first order. Therefore Eqs. (8.23) for calculating the conserved vectors take the simple form

$$C^i = W^\alpha \frac{\partial\mathcal{L}}{\partial u_i^\alpha}, \quad i = 1, 2. \quad (11.38)$$

We denote

$$t = x^1, \quad x = x^2, \quad v = u^1, \quad \rho = u^2, \quad p = u^3.$$

In this notation conservation equation (8.2) will be written in the form

$$[D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2)]_{(11.15)} = 0. \quad (11.39)$$

Writing (11.38) in the form

$$C^1 = W^1 \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial v_t} + W^2 \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \rho_t} + W^3 \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial p_t},$$

$$C^2 = W^1 \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial v_x} + W^2 \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \rho_x} + W^3 \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial p_x}$$

and substituting the expression (11.28) for \mathcal{L} we obtain the following final expressions for computing the components of conserved vectors:

$$C^1 = UW^1 + RW^2 + PW^3, \quad (11.40)$$

$$C^2 = (vU + \rho R - pP)W^1 + vRW^2 + \left(\frac{1}{\rho}U + vP\right)W^3, \quad (11.41)$$

where

$$W^\alpha = \eta^\alpha - \xi^i u_i^\alpha, \quad \alpha = 1, 2, 3. \quad (11.42)$$

We will apply Eqs. (11.40)-(11.41) to the nonlocal symmetries (11.20). First we write the expressions (11.42) for the operator X_7 from (11.20):

$$W^1 = -\sigma v_x, \quad W^2 = \frac{\rho}{p} - \sigma \rho_x, \quad W^3 = -(1 + \sigma p_x). \quad (11.43)$$

Then we substitute (11.43) in (11.40)-(11.41) and obtain four conserved vectors by replacing U, R, P with each of four different solutions (11.34)-(11.37) of the adjoint system (11.29). Some of these conserved vectors may be trivial. We select only the nontrivial ones.

Let us calculate the conserved vector obtained by eliminating U, R, P by using the solution (11.34), $U = 0, R = 1, P = 0$. In this case (11.40)-(11.41) and (11.43) yield

$$C^1 = W^2 = \frac{\rho}{p} - \sigma \rho_x, \quad (11.44)$$

$$C^2 = \rho W^1 + v W^2 = -\sigma \rho v_x + \frac{\rho}{p} v - \sigma v \rho_x.$$

We write

$$-\sigma \rho_x = -D_x(\sigma \rho) + \rho \sigma_x,$$

replace σ_x with $-1/p$ according to Eqs. (11.22) and obtain

$$C^1 = -D_x(\sigma\rho).$$

Therefore application of the operations (8.4)-(8.6) yields $\tilde{C}^1 = 0$ and

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{C}^2 &= -\sigma\rho v_x + \frac{\rho}{p}v - \sigma v\rho_x - D_t(\sigma\rho) \\ &= -\sigma\rho v_x + \frac{\rho}{p}v - \sigma v\rho_x - \sigma\rho_t - \sigma_t\rho \\ &= -\sigma(\rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x).\end{aligned}$$

We have replaced σ_t with v/p according to Eqs. (11.23). The above expression for \tilde{C}^2 vanishes on Eqs. (11.15). Hence, the conserved vector (11.44) is trivial.

Utilization of the solutions (11.35) and (11.36) also leads to trivial conserved vectors only. Finally, using the solution (11.37),

$$U = t\rho, \quad R = tv - x, \quad P = 0,$$

we obtain, upon simplifying by using the operations (8.4)-(8.6), the following nontrivial conserved vector:

$$C^1 = \sigma\rho, \quad C^2 = \sigma\rho v + t. \quad (11.45)$$

The conservation equation (11.39) is satisfied in the following form:

$$D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2) = \sigma(\rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x). \quad (11.46)$$

Note that we can write C^2 in (11.45) without t since it adds only the trivial conserved vector with the components $C^1 = 0$, $C^2 = t$. Thus, removing t in (11.45) and using the definition of σ given in (11.21) we formulate the result.

Proposition 11.1. The nonlocal symmetry X_7 of the Chaplygin gas gives the following nonlocal conserved vector:

$$C^1 = -\rho \int \frac{dx}{p}, \quad C^2 = -\rho v \int \frac{dx}{p}. \quad (11.47)$$

Now we use the operator X_8 from (11.20). In this case

$$\begin{aligned}W^1 &= t - \left(\frac{t^2}{2} + s\right)v_x, \\ W^2 &= \frac{\rho\tau}{p} - \left(\frac{t^2}{2} + s\right)\rho_x, \\ W^3 &= -\tau - \left(\frac{t^2}{2} + s\right)p_x.\end{aligned} \quad (11.48)$$

Substituting in (11.40)-(11.41) the expressions (11.48) and the solution (11.34) of the adjoint system, i.e. letting $U = 0$, $R = 1$, $P = 0$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= W^2 = \frac{\rho\tau}{p} - \left(\frac{t^2}{2} + s\right) \rho_x, \\ C^2 &= \rho W^1 + vW^2 = t\rho + \frac{\rho v\tau}{p} - \left(\frac{t^2}{2} + s\right) (\rho v_x + v\rho_x). \end{aligned}$$

Noting that

$$-\left(\frac{t^2}{2} + s\right) \rho_x = -\frac{\rho\tau}{p} - D_x \left(\frac{t^2}{2} \rho + \rho s\right)$$

we reduce the above vector to the trivial conserved vector $\tilde{C}^1 = 0$, $\tilde{C}^2 = 0$.

Taking the solution (11.35) of the adjoint system, i.e. letting

$$U = 2\rho v, \quad R = v^2, \quad P = -1,$$

we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= 2\rho v W^1 + v^2 W^2 - W^3 \\ &= 2t\rho v + \frac{\rho\tau v^2}{p} + \tau - \left(\frac{t^2}{2} + s\right) D_x (\rho v^2 - p), \\ C^2 &= (3\rho v^2 + p)W^1 + v^3 W^2 + vW^3 \\ &= t(3\rho v^2 + p) + \frac{\rho\tau v^3}{p} - v\tau \\ &\quad - \left(\frac{t^2}{2} + s\right) (3\rho v^2 v_x + v^3 \rho_x + p v_x + v p_x). \end{aligned}$$

Then, upon rewriting C^1 in the form

$$C^1 = 2t\rho v + 2\tau - D_x \left[\left(\frac{t^2}{2} + s\right) (\rho v^2 - p) \right]$$

and applying the operations (8.4)-(8.6) we arrive at the following conserved vector:

$$C^1 = t\rho v + \tau, \quad C^2 = t(\rho v^2 + p). \quad (11.49)$$

The conservation equation (11.39) is satisfied for (11.49) in the following form:

$$D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2) = t\rho \left(v_t + v v_x + \frac{1}{\rho} p_x \right) + t v (\rho_t + v \rho_x + \rho v_x). \quad (11.50)$$

Taking the solution (11.36) of the adjoint system, i.e. letting

$$U = \rho, \quad R = v, \quad P = 0,$$

we obtain

$$C^1 = \rho W^1 + v W^2, \quad C^2 = 2\rho v W^1 + v^2 W^2 + W^3.$$

Substituting the expressions (11.48) for W^1, W^2, W^3 and simplifying as in the previous case we obtain the conserved vector

$$C^1 = t\rho, \quad C^2 = t\rho v - \tau. \quad (11.51)$$

The conservation equation (11.39) is satisfied for (11.49) in the following form:

$$D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2) = t(\rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x). \quad (11.52)$$

Finally, we take the solution (11.37), $U = t\rho$, $R = tv - x$, $P = 0$, and obtain

$$C^1 = t\rho W^1 + (tv - x)W^2, \quad C^2(2t\rho v - x\rho)W^1 + (tv^2 - xv)W^2 + tW^3.$$

Simplifying as above, we arrive at the conserved vector

$$C^1 = \left(\frac{t^2}{2} - s\right)\rho, \quad C^2 = \left(\frac{t^2}{2} - s\right)\rho v - t\tau. \quad (11.53)$$

The conservation equation (11.39) is satisfied for (11.49) in the following form:

$$D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2) = \left(\frac{t^2}{2} - s\right)(\rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x). \quad (11.54)$$

Substituting in the conserved vectors (11.49), (11.51) and (11.53) the definition (11.21) of the nonlocal variables we formulate the result.

Proposition 11.2. The nonlocal symmetry X_8 of the Chaplygin gas gives the following nonlocal conserved vectors:

$$C^1 = t\rho v + \int \rho dx, \quad C^2 = t(\rho v^2 + p); \quad (11.55)$$

$$C^1 = t\rho, \quad C^2 = t\rho v - \int \rho dx; \quad (11.56)$$

$$C^1 = \left[\frac{t^2}{2} + \int \frac{1}{p} \left(\int \rho dx\right) dx\right] \rho, \quad (11.57)$$

$$C^2 = \left[\frac{t^2}{2} + \int \frac{1}{p} \left(\int \rho dx\right) dx\right] \rho v - t \int \rho dx.$$

Theorem 11.1. Application of Theorem 8.2 to *two* nonlocal symmetries (11.20) gives *four* nonlocal conservation laws (11.47), (11.55)-(11.57) for the Chaplygin gas (11.15).

11.5 The operator identity for nonlocal symmetries

Example 11.1. Let us verify that the operator identity (7.1) is satisfied for the nonlocal symmetry X_7 of the Chaplygin gas. Specifically, let us check that the coefficients of

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial v}, \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho}, \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial p}, \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t}, \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial v_x}, \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho_t}, \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho_x}, \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial p_t}, \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial p_x} \quad (11.58)$$

in both sides of (7.1) are equal. Using the first prolongation (11.24) of X_7 and the definition of the nonlocal variable σ given in Eqs. (11.23) we see that the left-hand side of the identity (7.1) is written

$$\begin{aligned} X_7 + D_i(\xi^i) &= \sigma \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial}{\partial p} + \frac{\rho}{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} - \frac{v v_x}{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t} + \frac{v_x}{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_x} - \frac{v p_x}{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial p_t} \\ &+ \frac{p_x}{p} \frac{\partial}{\partial p_x} + \left(\frac{\rho_t}{p} - \frac{\rho p_t}{p^2} - \frac{v \rho_x}{p} \right) \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho_t} + \left(2 \frac{\rho_x}{p} - \frac{\rho p_x}{p^2} \right) \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho_x} - \frac{1}{p}. \end{aligned} \quad (11.59)$$

Then we use the expressions (11.43) of W^α for the operator X_7 , substitute them in the definition (7.5) of N^i and obtain in our approximation:

$$\begin{aligned} N^1 &= -\sigma v_x \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t} + \left(\frac{\rho}{p} - \sigma \rho_x \right) \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho_t} - (1 + \sigma p_x) \frac{\partial}{\partial p_t}, \\ N^2 &= \sigma - \sigma v_x \frac{\partial}{\partial v_x} + \left(\frac{\rho}{p} - \sigma \rho_x \right) \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho_x} - (1 + \sigma p_x) \frac{\partial}{\partial p_t}. \end{aligned}$$

Now the right-hand side of (7.1) is written:

$$\begin{aligned} &W^1 \frac{\delta}{\delta v} + W^2 \frac{\delta}{\delta \rho} + W^3 \frac{\delta}{\delta p} + D_t N^1 + D_x N^2 \\ &= -\sigma v_x \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial v} - D_t \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t} - D_t \frac{\partial}{\partial v_x} \right] \\ &+ \left(\frac{\rho}{p} - \sigma \rho_x \right) \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} - D_t \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho_t} - D_x \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho_x} \right] \\ &- (1 + \sigma p_x) \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial p} - D_t \frac{\partial}{\partial p_t} - D_x \frac{\partial}{\partial p_x} \right] \\ &+ D_t \left[-\sigma v_x \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t} + \left(\frac{\rho}{p} - \sigma \rho_x \right) \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho_t} - (1 + \sigma p_x) \frac{\partial}{\partial p_t} \right] \\ &+ D_x \left[\sigma - \sigma v_x \frac{\partial}{\partial v_x} + \left(\frac{\rho}{p} - \sigma \rho_x \right) \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho_x} - (1 + \sigma p_x) \frac{\partial}{\partial p_t} \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (11.60)$$

Making the changes in two last lines of Eq. (11.60) such as

$$D_t \left[-\sigma v_x \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t} \right] = -\sigma v_x D_t \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t} - D_t(\sigma v_x) \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t} = -\sigma v_x D_t \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t} - \left(\frac{v}{p} v_x + \sigma v_{tx} \right) \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t}$$

one can see that the coefficients of the differentiations (11.58) in (11.59) and (11.60) coincide. Inspection of the coefficients of the differentiations in higher derivatives $v_{tt}, v_{tx}, v_{xx}, \dots$ requires the higher-order prolongations of the operator X_7 .

Exercise 11.1. Verify that the operator identity (7.1) is satisfied in the same approximation as in Example 11.1 for the nonlocal symmetry operator X_8 from (11.20).

12 Comparison with the “direct method”

12.1 General discussion

Theorem 8.2 allows to construct conservation laws for equations with known symmetries simply by substituting in Eqs. (8.23) the expressions W^α and \mathcal{L} given by Eqs. (8.21) and (8.21), respectively.

The “direct method” means the determination of the conserved vectors (8.3) by solving Eq. (8.2) for C^i . Upon restricting the highest order of derivatives of u involved in C^i , Eq. (8.2) splits into several equations. If one can solve the resulting system, one obtains the desired conserved vectors. Existence of symmetries is not required.

To the best of my knowledge, the direct method was used for the first time in 1798 by Laplace [33]. He applied the method to Kepler’s problem in celestial mechanics and found a new vector-valued conserved quantity (see [33], Book II, Chap. III, Eqs. (P)) known as Laplace’s vector.

The application of the direct method to the gasdynamic equations (11.1) allowed to demonstrate in [34] that all conservation laws involving only the independent and dependent variables (11.2), (11.3) were provided by the classical conservation laws (mass, energy, momentum, angular momentum and center-of-mass) given in Section 11.1 and the following two special conservation laws

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt} \int_{\Omega(t)} \{ t(\rho|\mathbf{v}|^2 + np) - \rho \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{v} \} d\omega &= - \int_{S(t)} p (2t\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{x}) \cdot \boldsymbol{\nu} dS, \\ \frac{d}{dt} \int_{\Omega(t)} \{ t^2(\rho|\mathbf{v}|^2 + np) - \rho \mathbf{x} \cdot (2t\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{x}) \} d\omega &= - \int_{S(t)} 2tp (t\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{x}) \cdot \boldsymbol{\nu} dS \end{aligned}$$

that were found in [35] in the case $\gamma = (n + 2)/n$ by using the symmetry ideas.

All local conservation laws for the heat equation $u_t - u_{xx} = 0$ have been found by the direct method in [36] (see in [14], vol. 1, Section 10.1; see also [37]). Namely it has been shown by considering the conservation equations of the form

$$D_t[\tau(t, x, u, u_x, u_{xx}, \dots)] + D_x[\psi(t, x, u, u_x, u_{xx}, \dots)] = 0$$

that all such conservation laws are given by

$$D_t[\varphi(t, x)u] + D_x[u\varphi_x(t, x) - u_x\varphi(t, x)] = 0,$$

where $v = \varphi(t, x)$ is an arbitrary solution of the adjoint equation $v_t + v_{xx} = 0$ to the heat equation. Similar result can be obtained by applying Theorem 8.2 for any linear equation, e.g. for the heat equation $u_t - \Delta u = 0$ with any number of spatial variables $x = (x^1, \dots, x^n)$. Namely, applying formula (8.23) to the scaling symmetry $X = u\partial/\partial u$ we obtain the conservation law

$$D_t[\varphi(t, x)u] + \nabla \cdot [u\nabla\varphi(t, x) - \varphi(t, x)\nabla u] = 0,$$

where $v = \varphi(t, x)$ is an arbitrary solution of the adjoint equation $v_t + \Delta v = 0$ to the heat equation. This conservation law embraces the conservation laws associated with all other symmetries of the heat equation.

Various mathematical models for describing the geological process of segregation and migration of large volumes of molten rock were proposed in the geophysical literature (see the papers [38], [39], [40], [41], [42] and the references therein). One of them is known as the *generalized magma equation* and has the form

$$u_t + D_z [u^n - u^n D_z (u^{-m} u_t)] = 0, \quad n, m = \text{const.} \quad (12.1)$$

It is accepted as a reasonable mathematical model for describing melt migration through the Earth's mantle. Several conservation laws for this model have been calculated by the direct method in [39], [41] and interpreted from symmetry point of view in [42]. It is shown in [43] that Eq. (12.1) is quasi self-adjoint with the substitution (1.34) given by $v = u^{1-n-m}$ if $m + n \neq 1$ and $v = \ln |u|$ if $m + n = 1$. These substitutions show that Eq. (12.1) is strictly self-adjoint (Definition 1.2) if $m + n = 0$. Using the quasi self-adjointness, the conservation laws are easily computed in [43].

Some simplification of the direct method was suggested in [29]. Namely, one writes the conservation equation in the form (8.7),

$$D_i(C^i) = \mu^{\bar{\alpha}} F_{\bar{\alpha}}(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}), \quad (8.7)$$

and first finds the undetermined coefficients $\mu^{\bar{\alpha}}$ by satisfying the integrability condition of Eqs. (8.7), i.e. by solving the equations (see Proposition 7.1 in Section 7.2)

$$\frac{\delta}{\delta u^{\alpha}} \left[\mu^{\bar{\beta}}(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots) F_{\bar{\beta}}(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}) \right] = 0, \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, m. \quad (12.2)$$

Then, for each solution $\mu^{\bar{\alpha}}$ of Eqs. (12.2), the components C^i of the corresponding conserved vector are computed from Eq. (8.7). In simple situations C^i can be detected merely by looking at the right-hand side of Eq. (8.7), see further Example 12.1.

Remark 12.1. Note that Eq. (12.2) should be satisfied on the solutions of Eqs. (8.1). Then the left-hand side of (12.2) can be written as

$$F_{\alpha}^*(x, u, v, \dots, u_{(s)}, v_{(s)}) \Big|_{v=\mu(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots)}$$

with F_{α}^* defined by Eq. (3.2).

The reader can find a detailed discussion of the direct method in the recent book [13]. I will compare two methods by considering few examples and exercises.

12.2 Examples and exercises

Example 12.1. (See [13], Sec. 1.3). Let us consider the KdV equation (3.6),

$$u_t = u_{xxx} + uu_x, \quad (3.6)$$

and write the condition (12.2) for $\mu = \mu(t, x, u)$. We have:

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{\delta}{\delta u} [\mu(t, x, u)(u_t - u_{xxx} - uu_x)] \\ &= -D_t(\mu) + D_x^3(\mu) + D_x(u\mu) - \mu u_x + (u_t - u_{xxx} - uu_x) \frac{\partial \mu}{\partial u} \\ &= -D_t(\mu) + D_x^3(\mu) + uD_x(\mu) + (u_t - u_{xxx} - uu_x) \frac{\partial \mu}{\partial u}. \end{aligned}$$

In accordance with Remark 12.1, we consider this expression on the solutions of the KdV equation and see that Eq. (12.2) coincides with the adjoint equation (3.7) to (3.6):

$$D_t(\mu) = D_x^3(\mu) + uD_x(\mu). \quad (12.3)$$

Its solution is given in Example 3.1 and has the form (3.8),

$$\mu = A_1 + A_2 u + A_3(x + tu), \quad A_1, A_2, A_3 = \text{const.}$$

Thus, we have the following three linearly independent solutions of Eq. (12.3):

$$\mu_1 = 1, \quad \mu_2 = u, \quad \mu_3 = (x + tu).$$

and the corresponding three equations (8.7):

$$D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2) = u_t - u_{xxx} - uu_x, \quad (12.4)$$

$$D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2) = u(u_t - u_{xxx} - uu_x), \quad (12.5)$$

$$D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2) = (x + tu)(u_t - u_{xxx} - uu_x). \quad (12.6)$$

In this simple example the components C^1, C^2 of the conserved vector can be easily seen from the right-hand sides of Eqs. (12.4)-(12.6). In the case of (12.4), (12.5) it is obvious. Therefore let us consider the right-hand side of Eq. (12.6). We see that

$$\begin{aligned} (x + tu)u_t &= D_t \left(xu + \frac{1}{2} tu^2 \right) - \frac{1}{2} u^2, \\ -(x + tu)uu_x &= -D_x \left(\frac{1}{2} xu^2 + \frac{1}{3} tu^3 \right) + \frac{1}{2} u^2, \\ -(x + tu)u_{xxx} &= -D_x (xu_{xx} + tuu_{xx}) + u_{xx} + tu_x u_{xx}, \\ &= D_x \left(u_x + \frac{1}{2} tu_x^2 - xu_{xx} - tuu_{xx} \right). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, the right-hand side of Eq. (12.6) can be written in the divergence form:

$$\begin{aligned} &(x + tu)(u_t - u_{xxx} - uu_x) \\ &= D_t \left(t \frac{u^2}{2} + xu \right) + D_x \left[u_x + t \left(\frac{u_x^2}{2} - uu_{xx} - \frac{u^3}{3} \right) - x \left(\frac{u^2}{2} + u_{xx} \right) \right]. \end{aligned}$$

The expressions under $D_t(\dots)$ and $D_x(\dots)$ give C^1 and C^2 , respectively, in (12.6). Note that the corresponding conservation law

$$D_t \left(t \frac{u^2}{2} + xu \right) + D_x \left[u_x + t \left(\frac{u_x^2}{2} - uu_{xx} - \frac{u^3}{3} \right) - x \left(\frac{u^2}{2} + u_{xx} \right) \right] = 0. \quad (12.7)$$

was derived from the Galilean invariance of the KdV equation (see [10], Section 22.5) and by the direct method (see [13], Section 1.3.5).

The similar treatment of the right-hand sides of the equations (12.4) and (12.5) leads to Eq. (3.6) and to the conservation law

$$D_t(u^2) + D_x \left(u_x^2 - 2uu_{xx} - \frac{2}{3} u^3 \right) = 0, \quad (12.8)$$

respectively. Theorem 8.2 associates the conservation law (12.8) with the scaling symmetry of the KdV equation.

Exercise 12.1. Apply the direct method to the *short pulse equation* (10.11) using the differential substitution (10.15). In this case Eq. (8.7) is written

$$\begin{aligned} D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2) &= u_t u_{xt} - \frac{1}{2} u^2 u_x u_{xt} \\ &- \left(u + \frac{1}{2} u^2 u_{xx} + u u_x^2 \right) u_t + \frac{1}{2} u^3 u_x + \frac{1}{4} u^4 u_x u_{xx} + \frac{1}{2} u^3 u_x^3. \end{aligned} \quad (12.9)$$

Exercise 12.2. Consider the Boussinesq equations (8.11). Taking its formal Lagrangian

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L} &= \omega [\Delta\psi_t - g\rho_x - f v_z - \psi_x \Delta\psi_z + \psi_z \Delta\psi_x] \\ &+ \mu [v_t + f\psi_z - \psi_x v_z + \psi_z v_x] + r [\rho_t + (N^2/g)\psi_x - \psi_x \rho_z + \psi_z \rho_x], \end{aligned}$$

where ω, μ, r are new dependent variables, we obtain the adjoint system to Eqs. (8.11):

$$\frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \psi} = 0, \quad \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta v} = 0, \quad \frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \rho} = 0. \quad (12.10)$$

It is shown in [44] that the system (8.11) is self-adjoint. Namely, the substitution

$$\omega = \psi, \quad \mu = -v, \quad r = -(g^2/N^2)\rho \quad (12.11)$$

maps the adjoint system (12.10) into the system (8.11). Using the self-adjointness, nontrivial conservation laws were constructed via Theorem 8.2. Apply the direct method to the system (8.11). Note that knowledge of the substitution (12.11) gives the following equation Eq. (8.7):

$$\begin{aligned} D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2) + D_z(C^3) &= \psi [\psi_{txx} + \psi_{tzz} - g\rho_x - f v_z - \psi_x (\psi_{zxx} + \psi_{zzz}) + \psi_z (\psi_{xxx} + \psi_{xzz})] \\ &- v [v_t + f\psi_z - \psi_x v_z + \psi_z v_x] - \frac{g^2}{N^2} \rho \left[\rho_t + \frac{N^2}{g} \psi_x - \psi_x \rho_z + \psi_z \rho_x \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (12.12)$$

Example 12.2. Let us consider the conservation equation (11.46),

$$D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2) = \sigma(\rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x),$$

where σ is connected with the velocity v and the pressure p of the Chaplygin gas by Eqs. (11.22),

$$\sigma_x = -\frac{1}{p}, \quad \sigma_t + v\sigma_x = 0.$$

In this example Eqs. (12.2) are not satisfied. Indeed, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\delta}{\delta v} [\sigma(\rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x)] &= \sigma\rho_x - D_x(\sigma\rho) = -\rho\sigma = \rho \int \frac{dx}{p} \neq 0, \\ \frac{\delta}{\delta \rho} [\sigma(\rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x)] &= \sigma_t - D_x(\sigma v) + \sigma v_x = -(\sigma_t + v\sigma_x) = 0, \\ \frac{\delta}{\delta p} [\sigma(\rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x)] &= 0.\end{aligned}$$

Example 12.3. Let us consider the conservation equation (11.50),

$$D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2) = t\rho \left(v_t + vv_x + \frac{1}{\rho} p_x \right) + tv(\rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x).$$

Here Eqs. (12.2) are not satisfied. Namely, writing

$$t\rho \left(v_t + vv_x + \frac{1}{\rho} p_x \right) + tv(\rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x) = t\rho v_t + 2t\rho v v_x + tp_x + tv\rho_t + tv^2\rho_x$$

we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\delta}{\delta v} [t\rho v_t + 2t\rho v v_x + tp_x + tv\rho_t + tv^2\rho_x] &= -\rho, \\ \frac{\delta}{\delta \rho} [t\rho v_t + 2t\rho v v_x + tp_x + tv\rho_t + tv^2\rho_x] &= -v, \\ \frac{\delta}{\delta p} [t\rho v_t + 2t\rho v v_x + tp_x + tv\rho_t + tv^2\rho_x] &= 0.\end{aligned}$$

Exercise 12.3. Check if Eqs. (12.2) are satisfied for the conservation equations (11.52) and (11.54).

PART 3

Utilization of conservation laws for constructing solutions of PDEs

13 General discussion of the method

As mentioned in Section 7.4, one can integrate or reduce the order of linear ordinary differential equations by rewriting them in a conservation form (7.39). Likewise one can integrate or reduce the order of a nonlinear ordinary differential equation as well as a system of ordinary differential equations using their conservation laws. Namely, a conservation law

$$D_x (\psi(x, y, y', \dots, y^{(s-1)})) = 0 \quad (13.1)$$

for a nonlinear ordinary differential equation

$$F(x, y, y', \dots, y^{(s)}) = 0 \quad (13.2)$$

yields the first integral

$$\psi(x, y, y', \dots, y^{(s-1)}) = C_1. \quad (13.3)$$

We will discuss now an extension of this idea to partial differential equations. Namely, we will apply conservation laws for constructing particular exact solutions of systems of partial differential equations. Detailed calculations are given in examples considered in the next sections.

Let us assume that the system (8.1),

$$F_{\bar{\alpha}}(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}) = 0, \quad \bar{\alpha} = 1, \dots, \bar{m}, \quad (13.4)$$

has a conservation law (8.2),

$$[D_i(C^i)]_{(13.4)} = 0, \quad (13.5)$$

with a known conserved vector

$$C = (C^1, \dots, C^n), \quad (13.6)$$

where

$$C^i = C^i(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots), \quad i = 1, \dots, n.$$

We write the conservation equation (13.5) in the form (8.7),

$$D_i(C^i) = \mu^{\bar{\alpha}} F_{\bar{\alpha}}(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots, u_{(s)}). \quad (13.7)$$

For a given conserved vector (13.6) the coefficients $\mu^{\bar{\alpha}}$ in Eq. (13.7) are known functions $\mu^{\bar{\alpha}} = \mu^{\bar{\alpha}}(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots)$.

We will construct particular solutions of the system (13.4) by requiring that *on these solutions the vector (13.6) reduces to the following trivial conserved vector* :

$$C = (C^1(x^2, \dots, x^n), \dots, C^m(x^1, \dots, x^{n-1})). \quad (13.8)$$

In other words, we look for particular solutions of the system (13.4) by adding to Eqs. (13.4) the *differential constraints*

$$\begin{aligned} C^1(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots) &= h^1(x^2, x^3, \dots, x^n), \\ C^2(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots) &= h^2(x^1, x^3, \dots, x^n), \\ &\dots\dots\dots \\ C^n(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots) &= h^n(x^1, \dots, x^{n-1}), \end{aligned} \quad (13.9)$$

where $C^i(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots)$ are the components of the known conserved vector (13.6). Due to the constraints (13.9), the left-hand side of Eq. (13.7) vanishes identically. Hence the number of equations in the system (13.4) will be reduced by one.

The differential constraints (13.9) can be equivalently written as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} D_1 [C^1(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots)] &= 0, \\ D_2 [C^2(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots)] &= 0, \\ &\dots\dots\dots \\ D_n [C^n(x, u, u_{(1)}, \dots)] &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (13.10)$$

Remark 13.1. The overdetermined system of $\bar{m} + n$ equations (13.4), (13.10) reduces to $\bar{m} + n - 1$ equations due to the conservation law (13.5).

14 Application to the Chaplygin gas

14.1 Detailed discussion of one case

Let us apply the method to the Chaplygin gas equations (11.15),

$$\begin{aligned} v_t + vv_x + \frac{1}{\rho} p_x &= 0, \\ \rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x &= 0, \\ p_t + vp_x - pv_x &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (14.1)$$

We will construct a particular solution of the system (14.1) using the simplest conservation law (11.30),

$$D_t(\rho) + D_x(\rho v) = \rho_t + v\rho_x + \rho v_x. \quad (14.2)$$

The conservation equation (14.2) is written in the form (13.7) with the following conserved vector (13.6):

$$C^1 = \rho, \quad C^2 = \rho v. \quad (14.3)$$

The differential constraints (13.9) are written as follows:

$$\rho = g(x), \quad \rho v = h(t). \quad (14.4)$$

Thus we look for solutions of the form

$$\rho = g(x), \quad v = \frac{h(t)}{g(x)}. \quad (14.5)$$

The functions (14.5) solve the second equation in (14.1) because the conservation law (14.2) coincides with the second equation (14.1) (see Remark 13.1). Therefore it remains to substitute (14.5) in the first and third equations of the system (14.1). The result of this substitution can be solved for the derivatives of p :

$$\begin{aligned} p_x &= -h' + \frac{h^2 g'}{g^2}, \\ p_t &= -\frac{hg'}{g^2} p + \frac{hh'}{g} - \frac{h^3 g'}{g^3}. \end{aligned} \quad (14.6)$$

The compatibility condition $p_{xt} = p_{tx}$ of the system (14.6) gives the equation

$$\left(g'' - 2 \frac{g'^2}{g} \right) p = g^2 \frac{h''}{h} - 2g'h' - h^2 \frac{g''}{g} + 2h^2 \frac{g'^2}{g^2}. \quad (14.7)$$

For illustration purposes I will simplify further calculations by considering the particular case when the coefficient for p in Eq. (14.6) vanishes:

$$g'' - 2 \frac{g'^2}{g} = 0. \quad (14.8)$$

The solution of Eq. (14.8) is

$$g(x) = \frac{1}{ax + b}, \quad a, b = \text{const.} \quad (14.9)$$

Substituting (14.9) in Eq. (14.7) we obtain

$$h'' + 2ahh' = 0, \quad (14.10)$$

whence

$$h(t) = k \tan(c - akt) \quad (14.11)$$

if $a \neq 0$, and

$$h(t) = At + B \quad (14.12)$$

if $a = 0$.

If the constant a in (14.9) does not vanish, we substitute (14.9) and (14.11) in Eqs. (14.6), integrate them and obtain

$$p = k^2(ax + b) + Q \cos(c - akt), \quad Q = \text{const.} \quad (14.13)$$

In the case $a = 0$ the similar calculations yield

$$p = -Ax + \frac{b}{2} A^2 t^2 + ABbt + Q, \quad Q = \text{const.} \quad (14.14)$$

Thus, using the conservation law (14.2) we have arrived at the solutions

$$\begin{aligned} \rho &= \frac{1}{ax + b}, \\ v &= k(ax + b) \tan(c - akt), \\ p &= k^2(ax + b) + Q \cos(c - akt) \end{aligned} \quad (14.15)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \rho &= \frac{1}{b}, \\ v &= b(At + B), \\ p &= -Ax + \frac{b}{2} A^2 t^2 + ABbt + Q. \end{aligned} \quad (14.16)$$

14.2 Differential constraints provided by other conserved vectors

The conservation laws (11.31)-(11.33) give the following differential constraints (13.9):

$$\rho v^2 - p = g(x), \quad pv + \rho v^3 = h(t), \quad (14.17)$$

$$\rho v = g(x), \quad p + \rho v^2 = h(t), \quad (14.18)$$

$$t\rho v - x\rho = g(x), \quad tp + t\rho v^2 - x\rho v = h(t). \quad (14.19)$$

The nonlocal conserved vectors (11.49), (11.51) and (11.53) lead to the following differential constraints (13.9):

$$t\rho v + \tau = g(x), \quad p + \rho v^2 = h(t), \quad (14.20)$$

$$t\rho = g(x), \quad t\rho v - \tau = h(t), \quad (14.21)$$

$$\left(\frac{t^2}{2} - s\right) \rho = g(x), \quad \left(\frac{t^2}{2} - s\right) \rho v - t\tau = h(t). \quad (14.22)$$

The constraints (14.20) are not essentially different from the constraints (14.18). It is manifest if we write them in the form (13.10).

15 Application to nonlinear equation describing an irrigation system

The method of Section 13 can be used for constructing particular solutions not only of a system, but of a single partial differential equations as well.

Let us consider the nonlinear equation (6.1),

$$C(\psi)\psi_t = [K(\psi)\psi_x]_x + [K(\psi)(\psi_z - 1)]_z - S(\psi), \quad (15.1)$$

satisfying the nonlinear self-adjointness condition (6.3),

$$S'(\psi) = aC(\psi), \quad a = \text{const.} \quad (15.2)$$

and apply the method of Section 13 to the conserved vector (9.11),

$$C^1 = S(\psi)e^{at}, \quad C^2 = aK(\psi)\psi_x e^{at}, \quad C^3 = aK(\psi)(\psi_z - 1)e^{at}. \quad (15.3)$$

The conditions (13.9) are written:

$$S(\psi)e^{at} = f(x, z), \quad aK(\psi)\psi_x e^{at} = g(t, z), \quad aK(\psi)(\psi_z - 1)e^{at} = h(t, x).$$

These conditions mean that the left-hand sides of the first, second and third equation do not depend on t, x and z , respectively. Therefore they can be equivalently written as the following differential constraints (see Eqs. (13.10)):

$$\begin{aligned} aS(\psi) + S'(\psi)\psi_t &= 0, \\ [K(\psi)\psi_x]_x &= 0, \\ [K(\psi)(\psi_z - 1)]_z &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (15.4)$$

The constraints (15.4) reduce Eq. (15.1) to Eq. (15.2). Hence, the particular solutions of Eq. (15.1) provided by the conserved vector (15.3) are described by the system

$$\begin{aligned} aC(\psi) - S'(\psi) &= 0, \\ aS(\psi) + S'(\psi)\psi_t &= 0, \\ [K(\psi)\psi_x]_x &= 0, \\ [K(\psi)(\psi_z - 1)]_z &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (15.5)$$

PART 4

Approximate self-adjointness and approximate conservation laws

The methods developed in this paper can be extended to differential equations with a small parameter in order to construct approximate conservation laws using approximate symmetries. I will illustrate this possibility by examples. The reader interested in approximate symmetries can find enough material in [14], vol. 3, Chapters 2 and 9. A brief introduction to the subject can be found also in [45].

16 The van der Pol equation

The van der Pol equation has the form

$$F \equiv y'' + y + \varepsilon(y'^3 - y') = 0, \quad \varepsilon = \text{const.} \neq 0. \quad (16.1)$$

16.1 Approximately adjoint equation

We have:

$$\frac{\delta}{\delta y} \{z [y'' + y + \varepsilon (y'^3 - y')]\} = z'' + z + \varepsilon D_x (z - 3zy'^2).$$

Thus, the adjoint equation to the van der Pol equation is

$$F^* \equiv z'' + z + \varepsilon (z' - 3z'y'^2 - 6zy'y'') = 0.$$

We eliminate here y'' by using Eq. (16.1), consider ε as a small parameter and write F^* in the first order of precision with respect to ε . In other words, we write

$$y'' \approx -y. \quad (16.2)$$

Then we obtain the following *approximately adjoint equation* to Eq. (16.1):

$$F^* \equiv z'' + z + \varepsilon (z' - 3z'y'^2 + 6zy'y') = 0. \quad (16.3)$$

16.2 Approximate self-adjointness

Let us investigate Eq. (16.1) for approximate self-adjointness. Specifically, I will call Eq. (16.1) *approximately self-adjoint* if there exists a non-trivial (not vanishing identically) approximate substitution

$$z \approx f(x, y, y') + \varepsilon g(x, y, y') \quad (16.4)$$

such that F given by Eq. (16.1) and F^* defined by Eq. (16.3) approximately satisfy the condition (3.5) of nonlinear self-adjointness. In other words, the following equation is satisfied in the first-order of precision in ε :

$$F^* \Big|_{z=f+\varepsilon g} = \lambda F. \quad (16.5)$$

Note, that the unperturbed equation $y'' + y = 0$ is nonlinearly self-adjoint. Namely it coincides with the adjoint equation $z'' + z = 0$ upon the substitution

$$z = \alpha y + \beta \cos x + \gamma \sin x, \quad \alpha, \beta, \gamma = \text{const}. \quad (16.6)$$

Therefore we will consider the substitution (16.4) of the following restricted form:

$$z \approx f(x, y) + \varepsilon g(x, y, y'). \quad (16.7)$$

In differentiating $g(x, y, y')$ we will use Eq. (16.2) because we make out calculations in the first order of precision with respect to ε . Then we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} z' &= D_x(f) + \varepsilon D_x(g) \Big|_{y''=-y} \equiv f_x + y' f_y + \varepsilon (g_x + y' g_y - y g_{y'}), \\ z'' &= D_x^2(f) + \varepsilon D_x^2(g) \Big|_{y''=-y} \equiv f_{xx} + 2y' f_{xy} + y'^2 f_{yy} + y'' f_y \\ &\quad + \varepsilon (g_{xx} + 2y' g_{xy} - 2y g_{xy'} + y'^2 g_{yy} - 2y y' g_{yy'} + y^2 g_{y'y'} - y g_y - y' g_{y'}). \end{aligned} \quad (16.8)$$

Substituting (16.8) in (16.3) and solving Eq. (16.5) with $\varepsilon = 0$ we see that f is given by Eq. (16.6). Then $\lambda = C$ and the terms with ε in Eq. (16.5) give the following second-order linear partial differential equation for $g(x, y, y')$:

$$\begin{aligned} g + D_x^2(g) \Big|_{y''=-y} &= \alpha (4y'^3 - 6y^2 y' - 2y') \\ &\quad + \beta (\sin x - 3y'^2 \sin x - 6y y' \cos x) + \gamma (3y'^2 \cos x - \cos x - 6y y' \sin x). \end{aligned} \quad (16.9)$$

The standard existence theorem guarantees that Eq. (16.9) has a solution. It is manifest that the solution does not vanish because $g = 0$ does not satisfy Eq. (16.9). We conclude that the van der Pol equation (16.1) with a small parameter ε is approximately self-adjoint. The substitution (16.7) satisfying the approximate self-adjointness condition (16.5) has the form

$$z \approx \alpha y + \beta \cos x + \gamma \sin x + \varepsilon g(x, y, y'), \quad (16.10)$$

where α, β, γ are arbitrary constants and $g(x, y, y')$ solves Eq. (16.9).

16.3 Exact and approximate symmetries

If ε is treated as an arbitrary constant, Eq. (16.1) has only one point symmetry, namely the one-parameter group of translations of the independent variable x . We will write the generator $X_1 = \partial/\partial x$ of this group in the form (7.14):

$$X_1 = y' \frac{\partial}{\partial y}. \quad (16.11)$$

If ε is a small parameter, then Eq. (16.1) has, along with the exact symmetry (16.11), the following 7 approximate symmetries ([14], vol. 3, Section 9.1.3.3):

$$\begin{aligned} X_2 &= \{4y - \varepsilon [y^2 y' + 3xy (y^2 + y'^2)]\} \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, \\ X_3 &= \{8 \cos x + \varepsilon [(4 - 3y'^2 - 9y^2) x \cos x + 3(xy^2)' \sin x]\} \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, \\ X_4 &= \{8 \sin x + \varepsilon [(4 - 3y'^2 - 9y^2) x \sin x - 3(xy^2)' \cos x]\} \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, \\ X_5 &= \{24y^2 \cos x - 24yy' \sin x + \varepsilon [(12yy' + 9yy'^3 + 9y^3 y') x \sin x \\ &\quad + (12y^2 - 9y^2 y'^2 - 6y^4) \sin x - (12y^2 - 9y^2 y'^2 - 9y^4) x \cos x \\ &\quad - 3y^3 y' \cos x]\} \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, \\ X_6 &= \{24y^2 \sin x + 24yy' \cos x - \varepsilon [(12yy' + 9yy'^3 + 9y^3 y') x \cos x \\ &\quad + (12y^2 - 9y^2 y'^2 - 6y^4) \cos x + (12y^2 + 9y^2 y'^2 + 9y^4) x \sin x \\ &\quad + 3y^3 y' \sin x]\} \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, \\ X_7 &= \{4y \cos 2x - 4y' \sin 2x + \varepsilon [3(yy'^2 - y^3) x \cos 2x \\ &\quad - 3y^2 y' \cos 2x + 6y^2 y' x \sin 2x + 2(y - y^3) \sin 2x]\} \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, \\ X_8 &= \{4y \sin 2x + 4y' \cos 2x - \varepsilon [3(y^3 - yy'^2) x \sin 2x \\ &\quad + 3y^2 y' \sin 2x + 6y^2 y' x \cos 2x + 2(y - y^3) \cos 2x]\} \frac{\partial}{\partial y}. \end{aligned} \quad (16.12)$$

16.4 Approximate conservation laws

We can construct now approximate conserved quantities for the van der Pol equation using the formula (8.23) and the approximate substitution (16.10). Inserting in (8.23)

the formal Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L} = z [y'' + y + \varepsilon (y'^3 - y')]$$

we obtain

$$C = W [-z' + \varepsilon (3y'^2 z - z)] + W' z. \quad (16.13)$$

Let us calculate the conserved quantity (16.13) for the operator X_1 given by Eq. (16.11). In this case $W = y'$, $W' = y''$, and therefore (16.13) has the form

$$C = -y' z' + \varepsilon (3y'^3 - y') z + y'' z.$$

We eliminate here y'' via Eq. (16.1), use the approximate substitution (16.10) and obtain (in the first order of precision with respect to ε) the following approximate conserved quantity:

$$\begin{aligned} C = & -\alpha (y^2 + y'^2) + \beta (y' \sin x - y \cos x) - \gamma (y' \cos x + y \sin x) \\ & + \varepsilon \left(2\alpha y y'^3 + 2\beta y'^3 \cos x + 2\gamma y'^3 \sin x - y g - y' D_x(g) \Big|_{y''=-y} \right). \end{aligned} \quad (16.14)$$

Differentiating it and using the equations (16.1) and (16.2) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} D_x(C) = & \varepsilon y' \left[\alpha (4y'^3 - 6y^2 y' - 2y') + \beta (\sin x - 3y'^2 \sin x - 6y y' \cos x) \right. \\ & \left. + \gamma (3y'^2 \cos x - \cos x - 6y y' \sin x) - g - D_x^2(g) \Big|_{y''=-y} \right] + o(\varepsilon), \end{aligned} \quad (16.15)$$

where $o(\varepsilon)$ denotes the higher-order terms in ε . The equations (16.9) and (16.15) show that the quantity (16.14) satisfies the approximate conservation law

$$D_x(C) \Big|_{(16.1)} \approx 0. \quad (16.16)$$

Let us consider the operator X_2 from (16.12). In this case we have

$$\begin{aligned} W = & 4y - \varepsilon [y^2 y' + 3xy (y^2 + y'^2)], \\ W' \approx & 4y' - \varepsilon [2y^3 + 5y y'^2 + 3x (y^2 y' + y'^3)]. \end{aligned} \quad (16.17)$$

Proceeding as above we obtain the following approximate conserved quantity:

$$\begin{aligned} C = & 4y' (\beta \cos x + \gamma \sin x) - 4y (\gamma \cos x - \beta \sin x) \\ & + \varepsilon \left\{ 2\alpha y^2 (4y'^2 - y^2 - 2) + 4y' g - 4y D_x(g) \Big|_{y''=-y} \right. \\ & + [7y y'^2 - 3x y' (y^2 + y'^2) - 2y^3 - 4y] (\beta \cos x + \gamma \sin x) \\ & \left. + [y^2 y' + 3xy (y^2 + y'^2)] (\gamma \cos x - \beta \sin x) \right\}. \end{aligned} \quad (16.18)$$

The calculation shows that the quantity (16.18) satisfies the approximate conservation law (16.16) in the following form:

$$\begin{aligned} D_x(C) &= 4(\beta \cos x + \gamma \sin x) [y'' + y + \varepsilon (y'^3 - y')] \\ &+ 4\varepsilon y \left[\alpha (4y'^3 - 6y^2 y' - 2y') + \beta (\sin x - 3y'^2 \sin x - 6yy' \cos x) \right. \\ &\left. + \gamma (3y'^2 \cos x - \cos x - 6yy' \sin x) - g - D_x^2(g) \Big|_{y''=-y} \right] + o(\varepsilon). \end{aligned} \quad (16.19)$$

Continuing this procedure, one can construct approximate conservation laws for the remaining approximate symmetries (16.12).

17 Perturbed KdV equation

Let us consider again the KdV equation (3.6),

$$u_t = u_{xxx} + uu_x, \quad (3.6)$$

and the following perturbed equation :

$$F \equiv u_t - u_{xxx} - uu_x - \varepsilon u = 0. \quad (17.1)$$

We will follow the procedure described in Section 16.

17.1 Approximately adjoint equation

Let us write the formal Lagrangian for Eq. (17.1) in the form

$$\mathcal{L} = v [-u_t + u_{xxx} + uu_x + \varepsilon u]. \quad (17.2)$$

Then

$$\frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} = v_t - v_{xxx} - D_x(uv) + vu_x + \varepsilon v = v_t - v_{xxx} - uv_x + \varepsilon v.$$

Hence, the approximately adjoint equation to Eq. (17.1) has the form

$$F^* \equiv v_t - v_{xxx} - uv_x + \varepsilon v = 0. \quad (17.3)$$

17.2 Approximate self-adjointness

As mentioned in Section 3.1, Example 3.1, the KdV equation (3.6) is nonlinearly self-adjoint with the substitution (3.8),

$$v = A_1 + A_2 u + A_3 (x + tu). \quad (3.8)$$

Therefore in the case of the perturbed equation (17.1) we look for the substitution

$$v = \phi(t, x, u) + \varepsilon\psi(t, x, u),$$

satisfying the nonlinear self-adjointness condition

$$F^* \Big|_{v=\phi+\varepsilon\psi} = \lambda F \quad (17.4)$$

in the first-order of precision in ε , in the following form:

$$v = A_1 + A_2u + A_3(x + tu) + \varepsilon\psi(t, x, u). \quad (17.5)$$

When we substitute the expression (17.5) in the definition (17.3) of F^* , the terms without ε in Eq. (17.4) disappear by construction of the substitution (3.8) and give $\lambda = A_2 + A_3t$. Then we write Eq. (17.4), rearranging the terms, in the form

$$\begin{aligned} & \varepsilon\psi_u[u_t - u_{xxx} - uu_x] - 3\varepsilon u_{xx}[u_x\psi_{uu} + \psi_{xu}] - \varepsilon u_x[u_x^2\psi_{uuu} + 3u_x\psi_{xuu} + 3\psi_{xxu}] \\ & + \varepsilon[\psi_t - \psi_{xxx} - u\psi_x + A_1 + A_2u + A_3(x + tu)] = -\varepsilon(A_2 + A_3t)u. \end{aligned} \quad (17.6)$$

In view Eq. (17.1), the first term in the first line of Eq. (17.6) is written $\varepsilon^2 u\psi_u$. Hence, this term vanishes in our approximation. The terms with u_{xx} in the first line of Eq. (17.6) yield

$$\psi_{uu} = 0, \quad \psi_{xu} = 0,$$

whence

$$\psi = f(t)u + g(t, x).$$

The third bracket in the first line of Eq. (17.6) vanishes, and Eq. (17.6) becomes

$$[f'(t) - g_x(t, x)]u + g_t(t, x) - g_{xxx}(t, x) + 2[A_2 + A_3t]u + A_1 + A_3x = 0.$$

After rather simple calculations we solve this equation and obtain

$$g(t, x) = A_4 - A_1t + (A_5 + 2A_2 - A_3t)x, \quad f(t) = A_6 + A_5t - \frac{3}{2}A_3t^2.$$

We conclude that the perturbed KdV equation (17.1) is approximately self-adjoint. The approximate substitution (17.5) has the following form:

$$\begin{aligned} v & \approx A_1 + A_2u + A_3(x + tu) \\ & + \varepsilon \left[\left(A_6 + A_5t - \frac{3}{2}A_3t^2 \right) u + A_4 - A_1t + (A_5 + 2A_2 - A_3t)x \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (17.7)$$

17.3 Approximate symmetries

Recall that the Lie algebra of point symmetries of the KdV equation (3.6) is spanned by the following operators:

$$\begin{aligned} X_1 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}, & X_2 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, & X_3 &= t \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial}{\partial u}, \\ X_4 &= 3t \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + x \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - 2u \frac{\partial}{\partial u}. \end{aligned} \quad (17.8)$$

Following the method for calculating approximate symmetries and using the terminology presented in [14], vol. 3, Chapter 2, we can prove that all symmetries (17.8) are stable. Namely the perturbed equation (17.1) inherits the symmetries (17.8) of the KdV equation in the form of the following approximate symmetries:

$$\begin{aligned} X_1 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}, & X_2 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, & X_3 &= t \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + \varepsilon \left(\frac{1}{2} t^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - t \frac{\partial}{\partial u} \right), \\ X_4 &= 3t \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + x \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - 2u \frac{\partial}{\partial u} - \varepsilon \left[\frac{9}{2} t^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + 3tx \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - (6tu + 3x) \frac{\partial}{\partial u} \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (17.9)$$

17.4 Approximate conservation laws

We can construct now the approximate conservation laws

$$[D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2)]_{(17.1)} \approx 0 \quad (17.10)$$

for the perturbed KdV equation (17.1) using its approximate symmetries (17.9), the general formula (8.23) and the approximate substitution (17.7). Inserting in (8.23) the formal Lagrangian (17.2) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= -Wv, \\ C^2 &= W [uv + v_{xx}] - v_x D_x(W) + v D_x^2(W). \end{aligned} \quad (17.11)$$

I will calculate here the conserved vector (17.11) for the operator X_4 from (17.9). In this case we have

$$W = -2u - 3tu_t - xu_x + \varepsilon \left(6tu + 3x + \frac{9}{2} t^2 u_t + 3txu_x \right). \quad (17.12)$$

We further simplify the calculations by taking the particular substitution (17.7) with $A_2 = 1$, $A_1 = A_3 = \dots = A_6 = 0$. Then

$$v = u + 2\varepsilon x. \quad (17.13)$$

Substituting (17.12), (17.13) in the first component of the vector (16.14) and then eliminating u_t via Eq. (17.1) we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &\approx (2u + 3tu_t + xu_x)(u + 2\varepsilon x) - \varepsilon \left(6tu + 3x + \frac{9}{2}t^2u_t + 3txu_x \right) u \\ &= 2u^2 + 3tuu_{xxx} + 3tu^2u_x + xuu_x + \varepsilon \left(xu + 6txu_{xxx} + 3txuu_x \right. \\ &\quad \left. + 2x^2u_x - 3tu^2 - \frac{9}{2}t^2uu_{xxx} - \frac{9}{2}t^2u^2u_x \right). \end{aligned}$$

Upon singling out the total derivatives in x , it is written:

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &\approx \frac{3}{2}u^2 - 3\varepsilon \left(xu + \frac{3}{2}tu^2 \right) + D_x \left[\frac{1}{2}xu^2 + tu^3 - \frac{3}{2}tu_x^2 + 3tuu_{xx} \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \varepsilon \left(2x^2u + \frac{3}{2}txu^2 - \frac{3}{2}t^2u^3 - 6tu_x + 6txu_{xx} + \frac{9}{4}t^2u_x^2 - \frac{9}{2}t^2uu_{xx} \right) \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (17.14)$$

Then we substitute (17.12), (17.13) in the second component of the vector (16.14), transfer the term $D_x(\dots)$ from C^1 to C^2 , multiply the resulting vector (C^1, C^2) by $2/3$ and arrive at the following vector:

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= u^2 - 2\varepsilon \left[xu + \frac{3}{2}tu^2 \right], \\ C^2 &= u_x^2 - \frac{2}{3}u^3 - 2uu_{xx} + \varepsilon \left[xu^2 - 2u_x + 2xu_{xx} + 2tu^3 - 3tu_x^2 + 6tuu_{xx} \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (17.15)$$

The approximate conservation law (17.10) for the vector (17.15) is satisfied in the following form:

$$\begin{aligned} [D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2)]_{(17.1)} &= 2u(u_t - u_{xxx} - uu_x - \varepsilon u) \\ &\quad - 2\varepsilon(x + 3tu)(u_t - u_{xxx} - uu_x). \end{aligned}$$

Acknowledgements

I thank Sergey Svirshchevskii for fruitful discussion which provided me with an incentive to write Section 7. I am cordially grateful to my wife Raisa for reading the manuscript carefully. Without her help and questions the work would be less palatable and contain essentially more misprints.

Bibliography

- [1] N. H. Ibragimov, “Integrating factors, adjoint equations and Lagrangians,” *Journal of Mathematical Analysis and Applications*, vol. 318, No. 2, pp. 742–757, 2006. doi: 10.1016/j.jmaa.2005.11.012.
- [2] N. H. Ibragimov, “Quasi-self-adjoint differential equations,” *Archives of ALGA*, vol. 4, pp. 55–60, 2007.
- [3] N. H. Ibragimov, “A new conservation theorem,” *Journal of Mathematical Analysis and Applications*, vol. 333, No. 1, pp. 311–328, 2007. doi: 10.1016/j.jmaa.2006.10.078.
- [4] N. H. Ibragimov, *Elementary Lie group analysis and ordinary differential equations*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons, 1999.
- [5] R. W. Atherton and G. M. Homsy, “On the existence and formulation of variational principles for nonlinear differential equations,” *Studies in Applied Mathematics*, vol. 54, No. 1, pp. 31–60, 1975.
- [6] N. H. Ibragimov, M. Torrisi, and R. Tracina, “Quasi self-adjoint nonlinear wave equations,” *J. Phys. A: Math. Theor.*, vol. 43, 2010. doi:10.1088/1751-8113/43/44/442001.
- [7] B. Fornberg and G. Whitham, “A numerical and theoretical study of certain nonlinear wave phenomena,” *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. London, A*, vol. 289, pp. 373–404, 1978.
- [8] G. Rosen, “Nonlinear heat conduction in solid H_2 ,” *Phys. Rev.*, vol. B19, No. 4, pp. 2398–2399, 1979.
- [9] G. W. Bluman and S. Kumei, “On the remarkable nonlinear diffusion equation $\frac{\partial}{\partial x} [a(u+b)^{-2} \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}] - \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = 0$,” *J. Math. Phys.*, vol. 21, No. 5, pp. 1019–1023, 1980.
- [10] N. H. Ibragimov, *Transformation groups in mathematical physics*. Moscow: Nauka, 1983. English transl., *Transformation groups applied to mathematical physics*, Reidel, Dordrecht, 1985.

- [11] C. Rogers, “Application of a reciprocal transformation to a two phase Stefan problem,” *J. Phys. A: Math. Gen.*, vol. 18, pp. L105–L109, 1985.
- [12] C. Rogers, “On a class of moving boundary value problems in nonlinear heat conduction: application of a Bäcklund transformation,” *Int. J. Nonlinear Mechanics*, vol. 21, pp. 249–256, 1986.
- [13] G. W. Bluman, A. F. Cheviakov, and S. C. Anco, *Applications of symmetry methods to partial differential equations*. New-York: Springer, 2010.
- [14] N. H. Ibragimov, ed., *CRC Handbook of Lie group analysis of differential equations*. Vol. 1, 1994; Vol. 2, 1995; Vol. 3, 1996. Boca Raton: CRC Press.
- [15] A. S. Kompaneets, “The establishment of thermal equilibrium between quanta and electrons,” *Zh. Eksp. Teor. Fiz.*, vol. 31, No. 5(11), pp. 876–885, 1956. English transl., *Soviet Physics JETP*, 4, 1957, p. 730–885.
- [16] R. Weymann, “Diffusion approximation for a photon gas interacting with a plasma via the Compton effect,” *Physics of Fluids*, vol. 8, pp. 2112–2114, 1965.
- [17] H. Dreicer, “Kinetic theory of an electron-photon gas,” *Phys. Fluids*, vol. 7, pp. 735–753, 1964.
- [18] R. Weymann, “The energy spectrum of radiation in the expanding universe,” *Astrophysical Journal*, vol. 145, pp. 560–571, 1966.
- [19] R. A. Syunyaev, “Induced Compton scattering by thermal electrons and low-frequency spectrum of radio sources,” *Astronomicheski Zhurnal*, vol. 48, No. 2, pp. 244–252, 1971. English transl., *Soviet Astronomy - AJ*, vol. 15, No. 2, pp. 190–196, 1971.
- [20] J. Chluba and R. A. Sunyaev, “Evolution of low-frequency features in the CMB spectrum due to stimulated Compton scattering and Doppler broadening,” *Astronomy and Astrophysics*, vol. 488, pp. 861–865, 2008.
- [21] I. S. Akhatov, R. K. Gazizov, and N. H. Ibragimov, “Nonlocal symmetries: Heuristic approach,” *Itogi Nauki i Tekhniki. Sovremennye problemy matematiki. Noveishye dostizhenia*, vol. 34, pp. 3–84, 1989. English transl., *Journal of Soviet Mathematics*, 55(1), pp. 1401–1450, 1991.
- [22] N. H. Ibragimov, M. Torrisi, and A. Valenti, “Preliminary group classification of equations $v_{tt} = f(x, v_x)v_{xx} + g(x, v_x)$,” *J. Math. Phys.*, vol. 32, No. 11, pp. 2988–2995, 1991. Reprinted in: N.H. Ibragimov, *Selected Works*, Vol. II, ALGA Publications, Karlskrona, 2006, Paper 7.

- [23] M. A. Tsyganov, V. N. Biktashev, J. Brindley, A. V. Holden, and G. Ivanitsky, “Waves in systems with cross-diffusion as a new class of nonlinear waves,” *Uspekhi Fizicheskikh Nauk*, vol. 177(3), pp. 275–300, 2007. English transl., *Physics - Uspekhi*, 50(3), 263-286, 2007.
- [24] J. Rosen, “Some properties of the Euler-Lagrange operators,” *Preprint TAUP-269-72*, Tel-Aviv University, Tel-Aviv, 1972.
- [25] N. H. Ibragimov, “The Noether identity,” *Continuum Dynamics*, vol. 38, pp. 26–32, 1979. Publisher: Institute of Hydrodynamics, USSR Acad. Sci., Siberian Branch, Novosibirsk. (Russian).
- [26] R. Courant and D. Hilbert, *Methods of mathematical physics*, vol. I, New York: Interscience Publishers, John Wiley, 1989.
- [27] V. V. Stepanov, *A course of differential equations*. Moscow: State Publisher of Phys.-Math. Literature, 1958. Russian, 7th ed.
- [28] N. H. Ibragimov, “Classical and new results on integrating factors,” *Archives of ALGA*, vol. 5, pp. 63–120, 2008.
- [29] S. C. Anco and G. W. Bluman, “Direct construction of conservation laws from field equations,” *Phys. Rev. Letters*, vol. 78, No. 15, pp. 2869–2873, 1997.
- [30] T. Schäfer and C. Wayne, “Propagation of ultra-short optical pulses in cubic nonlinear media,” *Physica D*, vol. 196, pp. 90–105, 2004.
- [31] A. Sakovich and S. Sakovich, “Solitary wave solutions of the short pulse equation,” *J. Phys A: Math. Gen.*, vol. 39, pp. L361–367, 2006.
- [32] A. Sakovich and S. Sakovich, “The short pulse equation is integrable,” *J. Phys. Soc. Jpn.*, vol. 74, pp. 239–241, 2005.
- [33] P. S. Laplace, *Traité de Mécanique Céleste*. Paris: t. 1, 1798. Reprinted in P. S. Laplace, *Ouvres complètes*, t. I, Gauthier–Villars, Paris, 1878; English transl., New York, 1966.
- [34] E. D. Terentyev and J. D. Shmyglevskii, “A complete system of equations in divergence form for the dynamics of an ideal gas,” *Zh. Vychisl. Mat. i Mat. Fiz.*, vol. 15, No. 6, pp. 1535–1544, 1975. English transl., *USSR Comput. Math. and Math. Phys.*, 15, 1975.
- [35] N. H. Ibragimov, “Conservation laws in hydrodynamics,” *Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR*, vol. 210, No. 6, pp. 1307–1309, 1973. English transl., *Soviet Physics Dokl.*, 18, 1973/74. Original unabridged version see in: N.H. Ibragimov, *Selected Works*, Vol. I, ALGA Publications, Karlskrona, 2006, Paper 12.

- [36] V. A. Dorodnitsyn and S. R. Svirshchevskii, *On Lie-Bäcklund groups admitted by the heat equation with a source*. Moscow: Preprint 101, Inst. Applied Math., USSR Acad. Sci., 1983.
- [37] S. Steinberg and K. B. Wolf, “Symmetry, conserved quantities and moments in diffusive equations,” *Journal of Mathematical Analysis and Applications*, vol. 80, pp. 36–45, 1981.
- [38] D. R. Scott and D. J. Stevenson, “Magma solitons,” *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, vol. 11, pp. 1161–1164, 1984.
- [39] V. Barcion and F. M. Richter, “Nonlinear waves in compacting media,” *J. Fluid Mech.*, vol. 164, pp. 429–448, 1986.
- [40] D. R. Scott and D. J. Stevenson, “Mechanics of fluid-rock systems,” *Ann. Rev. Fluid Mech.*, vol. 23, pp. 305–339, 1991.
- [41] S. E. Harris, “Conservation laws for a nonlinear wave equation,” *Nonlinearity*, vol. 9, pp. 187–208, 1996.
- [42] G. H. Maluleke and D. P. Mason, “Derivation of conservation laws for a nonlinear wave equation modelling melt migration using Lie point symmetry generators,” *Communications in Nonlinear Science and Numerical Simulation*, vol. 12, No. 4, pp. 423–433, 2007.
- [43] R. S. Khamitova, “Symmetries and nonlocal conservation laws of the general magma equation,” *Communications in Nonlinear Sciences and Numerical Simulation*, vol. 14, pp. 3754–3769, 2009. doi:10.1016/j.cnsns.2008.08.009.
- [44] N. H. Ibragimov and R. N. Ibragimov, “Group analysis of nonlinear internal waves in oceans. I: Lagrangian, conservation laws, invariant solutions,” *Archives of ALGA*, vol. 6, pp. 19–44, 2009. *arXiv: math-ph*, 1108-1877v1, pp. 1–28, 2011.
- [45] N. H. Ibragimov and V. F. Kovalev, *Approximate and renormgroup symmetries*. Beijing (P.R.China): Higher Education Press, 2009. In Series: *Nonlinear Physical Science*, Ed. Albert C.J Luo and N.H Ibragimov.

EQUIVALENCE ALGEBRA OF THE GENERALIZED KOMPANEETS EQUATION

ELENA D. AVDONINA
Department of Mathematics,
Ufa State Aviation Technical University,
12, K. Marx Str., Ufa, Russia

NAIL H. IBRAGIMOV
Department of Mathematics and Science,
Blekinge Institute of Technology,
SE-371 79 Karlskrona, Sweden

Abstract. We compute the equivalence Lie algebra for the generalized Kompaneets equation. It is shown that knowledge of the equivalence algebra and theorem on projections of equivalence generators allows to approximate the Kompaneets equation by an equation having a wider class of symmetries. Using an additional symmetry of the approximating equation we construct an exact non-stationary solution as a group invariant solution.

Keywords: Kompaneets equation, Equivalence algebra, Additional symmetry, Invariant solution.

1 Introduction

The Kompaneets equation [1]

$$u_t = \frac{1}{x^2} D_x [x^4 (u_x + u + u^2)] \quad (1.1)$$

describes the interaction of a low energy homogeneous photon gas with a low energy rarefied electron gas via the Compton scattering. It is known also as the photon diffusion equation. The Kompaneets equation admits only the time translation group with the generator

$$X_1 = \frac{\partial}{\partial t}. \quad (1.2)$$

Consequently the only group invariant solution of the Kompaneets equation is the steady-state solution $u = u(x)$. It is shown in [2] that Lie group analysis provides more invariant solutions for certain approximations of Eq. (1.1).

The aim of the present paper is to discuss possibilities provided by the equivalence group analysis applied to the following generalized Kompaneets equation (see [3], Section 4.3, Equation (4.10)):

$$u_t = \frac{1}{h(x)} D_x \{h^2(x)[u_x + f(u)]\}. \quad (1.3)$$

We will use the equations (1.1) and (1.3) written in the expanded forms

$$u_t = x^2[u_{xx} + (1 + 2u)u_x] + 4x[u_x + u^2 + u] \quad (1.4)$$

and

$$u_t = h(x)[u_{xx} + f'(u)u_x] + 2h'(x)[u_x + f(u)], \quad (1.5)$$

respectively.

2 Equivalence group generators

For calculating the equivalence Lie algebra we write Eq. (1.5) in the form

$$u_t = h[u_{xx} + f_u u_x] + 2h_x[u_x + f], \quad (2.1)$$

$$f_t = f_x = 0, \quad h_t = h_u = 0. \quad (2.2)$$

The equivalence generators

$$Y = \xi^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \xi^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \eta \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + \mu^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + \mu^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial h} \quad (2.3)$$

are obtained from the invariance condition of Eqs. (2.1). The coefficients ξ^i and η of the operator (2.3) depend on the variables t, x, u , whereas the coefficients μ^α depend on t, x, u, f, h .

The prolongation of the operator (2.3) to the derivatives of u, f and h involved in Eqs. (2.1)-(2.2) is written

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{Y} = & \xi^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \xi^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \eta \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + \mu^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + \mu^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial h} + \zeta_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial u_t} + \zeta_2 \frac{\partial}{\partial u_x} + \zeta_{22} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{xx}} \\ & + \omega_1^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial f_t} + \omega_2^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial f_x} + \omega_0^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial f_u} + \omega_1^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial h_t} + \omega_2^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial h_x} + \omega_0^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial h_u}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.4)$$

The invariance of the system (2.1)-(2.2) requires that the following equations should be satisfied on the manifold given by Eqs. (2.1)-(2.2):

$$\tilde{Y}(-u_t + h[u_{xx} + f_u u_x] + 2h_x[u_x + f]) = 0, \quad (2.5)$$

$$\tilde{Y}f_t = 0, \quad \tilde{Y}f_x = 0, \quad \tilde{Y}h_t = 0, \quad \tilde{Y}h_u = 0. \quad (2.6)$$

The coefficients ζ_1 , ζ_2 , ζ_{22} of the prolonged operator (2.4) are calculated by the usual prolongation formulae:

$$\begin{aligned}\zeta_1 &= D_t(\eta) - u_t D_t(\xi^1) - u_x D_t(\xi^2), \\ \zeta_2 &= D_x(\eta) - u_t D_x(\xi^1) - u_x D_x(\xi^2), \\ \zeta_{22} &= D_x^2(\eta) - u_t D_x^2(\xi^1) - u_x D_x^2(\xi^2) - 2u_{tx} D_x(\xi^1) - 2u_{xx} D_x(\xi^2).\end{aligned}\tag{2.7}$$

In calculating ω_i^α the independent variables are t, x, u and the dependent variables are f and h . We consider in these variables the operators of total differentiations \tilde{D}_t , \tilde{D}_x , \tilde{D}_u with respect to the independent variables t, x, u . Taking into account Eqs. (2.2), these operators are written in the form

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{D}_t &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}, \\ \tilde{D}_x &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + h_x \frac{\partial}{\partial h}, \\ \tilde{D}_u &= \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + f_u \frac{\partial}{\partial f}.\end{aligned}\tag{2.8}$$

The coefficients ω_i^α of the prolonged operator (2.4) are given by

$$\omega_i^\alpha = \tilde{D}_i(\mu^\alpha) - f_u^\alpha \tilde{D}_i(\eta), \quad i = 1, 2, 0,\tag{2.9}$$

where $\tilde{D}_1 = \tilde{D}_t$, $\tilde{D}_2 = \tilde{D}_x$, $\tilde{D}_0 = \tilde{D}_u$.

Let us begin the analysis of the determining equation by investigating Eqs. (2.6). They are written

$$\omega_1^1 = 0, \quad \omega_2^1 = 0, \quad \omega_1^2 = 0, \quad \omega_0^2 = 0.\tag{2.10}$$

The equations (2.9) and (2.8) give

$$\begin{aligned}\omega_1^1 &= \tilde{D}_t(\mu^1) - f_u \tilde{D}_t(\eta) = \frac{\partial \mu^1}{\partial t} - f_u \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial t}, \\ \omega_2^1 &= \tilde{D}_x(\mu^1) - f_u \tilde{D}_x(\eta) = \frac{\partial \mu^1}{\partial x} + h_x \frac{\partial \mu^1}{\partial h} - f_u \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x}, \\ \omega_1^2 &= \tilde{D}_t(\mu^2) - h_x \tilde{D}_t(\xi^2) = \frac{\partial \mu^2}{\partial t} - h_x \frac{\partial \xi^2}{\partial t}, \\ \omega_0^2 &= \tilde{D}_u(\mu^2) - h_x \tilde{D}_u(\xi^2) = \frac{\partial \mu^2}{\partial u} + f_u \frac{\partial \mu^2}{\partial f} - h_x \frac{\partial \xi^2}{\partial u}.\end{aligned}\tag{2.11}$$

Substituting (2.11) in Eqs. (2.10) we obtain the following system:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial \mu^1}{\partial t} - f_u \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial t} &= 0, \\
\frac{\partial \mu^1}{\partial x} + h_x \frac{\partial \mu^1}{\partial h} - f_u \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} &= 0, \\
\frac{\partial \mu^2}{\partial t} - h_x \frac{\partial \xi^2}{\partial t} &= 0, \\
\frac{\partial \mu^2}{\partial u} + f_u \frac{\partial \mu^2}{\partial f} - h_x \frac{\partial \xi^2}{\partial u} &= 0.
\end{aligned} \tag{2.12}$$

Since these equations should hold identically for all f_u and h_x , Eqs. (2.12) give rise to the following system:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial \mu^1}{\partial t} &= 0, \quad \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial t} = 0, \\
\frac{\partial \mu^1}{\partial x} &= 0, \quad \frac{\partial \mu^1}{\partial h} = 0, \quad \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial x} = 0, \\
\frac{\partial \mu^2}{\partial t} &= 0, \quad \frac{\partial \xi^2}{\partial t} = 0, \\
\frac{\partial \mu^2}{\partial u} &= 0, \quad \frac{\partial \mu^2}{\partial f} = 0, \quad \frac{\partial \xi^2}{\partial u} = 0.
\end{aligned} \tag{2.13}$$

The general solution of Eqs. (2.13) is given by

$$\xi^1(t, x, u), \quad \xi^2(x), \quad \eta(u), \quad \mu^1(u, f), \quad \mu^2(h, x). \tag{2.14}$$

We turn now to Eq. (2.5). It is written

$$-\zeta_1 + h[\zeta_{22} + f_u \zeta_2 + \omega_0^1 u_x] + [u_{xx} + f_u u_x] \mu^2 + 2h_x [\zeta_2 + \mu^1] + 2[u_x + f] \omega_2^2 = 0. \tag{2.15}$$

Using the formula (2.9) we obtain the coefficients ω involved in Eq. (2.15):

$$\begin{aligned}
\omega_0^1 &= \tilde{D}_u(\mu^1) - f' \tilde{D}_x(\eta) = \frac{\partial \mu^1}{\partial u} + f' \frac{\partial \mu^1}{\partial f} - f' \frac{\partial \eta}{\partial u}, \\
\omega_2^2 &= \tilde{D}_x(\mu^2) - h' \tilde{D}_x(\xi^2) = \frac{\partial \mu^2}{\partial x} + h' \frac{\partial \mu^2}{\partial h} - h' \frac{\partial \xi^2}{\partial x}.
\end{aligned} \tag{2.16}$$

Then we insert the information (2.14) in the prolongation formulae (2.7) and obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}
\zeta_1 &= \eta' u_t - u_t(\xi_t^1 + u_t \xi_u^1), \\
\zeta_2 &= \eta' u_x - u_t(\xi_x^1 + u_x \xi_u^1) - u_x \xi_x^2, \\
\zeta_{22} &= \eta' u_{xx} + \eta'' u_x^2 - u_t(\xi_{xx}^1 + 2u_x \xi_{xu}^1 + \xi_{uu}^1 u_x^2 + \xi_u^1 u_{xx}), \\
&\quad - u_x \xi_{xx}^2 - 2u_{tx}(\xi_x^1 + u_x \xi_u^1) - 2u_{xx} \xi_x^2.
\end{aligned} \tag{2.17}$$

We substitute the expressions (2.16)-(2.17) in the determining equation (2.15) and first nullify the term with u_{tx} :

$$-2u_{tx}(\xi_x^1 + u_x \xi_u^1) = 0.$$

This give the equations

$$\xi_x^1 = \xi_u^1 = 0.$$

Hence,

$$\xi^1 = \xi^1(t). \tag{2.18}$$

Now we substitute $\xi_x^1 = \xi_u^1 = 0$ in Eqs. (2.16) - (2.17) and obtain:

$$\omega_o^1 = \mu_u^1 + [\mu_f^1 - \eta'(u)]f_u, \quad \omega_2^2 = \mu_x^2 + [\mu_h^2 - \xi_x^2]h_x; \tag{2.19}$$

$$\zeta_1 = [\eta'(u) - \xi_t^1]u_t, \quad \zeta_2 = \eta'(u)u_x - \xi_x^2 u_x, \tag{2.20}$$

$$\zeta_{22} = [\eta'(u) - 2\xi_x^2]u_{xx} + \eta''(u)u_x^2 - \xi_{xx}^2 u_x.$$

Upon inserting the expressions in the determining equation (2.15) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
& -\eta' u_t + h[\eta' u_{xx} + \eta'' u_x^2 - \xi_{xx}^2 u_x - 2\xi_x^2 u_{xx} + f' \eta' u_x - \\
& f' \xi_x^2 u_x + \mu'_u u_x + (\mu'_f - \eta')f' u_x] + [u_{xx} + f' u_x] \mu^2 + \\
& 2h'[\mu' + \eta' u_x] + 2(u_x + f) \cdot [\mu_x^2 + (\mu_h^2 - \xi_x^2)h'] = 0.
\end{aligned} \tag{2.21}$$

We replace u_t with its expression given by Eq. (2.1) and write the first term in Eq. (2.21) in the form

$$-\eta'[h u_{xx} + h f_u u_x + 2h_x u_x + 2h_x f].$$

Applying to the resulting determining equation (2.21) the usual procedure of solving determining equations, we arrive at the following general solution of the determining equations (2.5)-(2.5):

$$\begin{aligned}
\xi^1 &= C_1 + C_2 t, \quad \xi^2 = C_3 + C_4 x, \quad \eta = C_5 + C_6 u, \\
\mu^1 &= (C_6 - C_4) f, \quad \mu^2 = (2C_4 - C_2) h,
\end{aligned} \tag{2.22}$$

where $C_1, C_2, C_3, C_4, C_5, C_6$ are arbitrary constants. The general solution of the determining equations provides the following equivalence generator for the generalized Kompaneets equation (1.5):

$$Y = C_1 Y_1 + C_2 Y_2 + \cdots + C_6 Y_6. \quad (2.23)$$

Thus, the basis of the equivalence Lie algebra for our equation is spanned by the operators

$$\begin{aligned} Y_1 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}, & Y_2 &= t \frac{\partial}{\partial t} - h \frac{\partial}{\partial h}, \\ Y_3 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, & Y_4 &= x \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - f \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + 2h \frac{\partial}{\partial h}, \\ Y_5 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial u}, & Y_6 &= u \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + f \frac{\partial}{\partial f}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.24)$$

3 A model with additional symmetry

Consider the following projections X and Z of the equivalence generator (2.23):

$$\begin{aligned} \text{pr}_{(t,x,u)}(Y) &= X \equiv \xi^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \xi^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \eta \frac{\partial}{\partial u}, \\ \text{pr}_{(x,u,f,h)}(Y) &= Z \equiv \xi^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \eta \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + \mu^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + \mu^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial h}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.1)$$

We will use the theorem on projections (N.H. Ibragimov, 1986; see Paper 3 in [4]). In our case, the theorem states that if the equations

$$f = F(u), \quad h = H(x) \quad (3.2)$$

are invariant with respect to a group with the generator Z , then the corresponding equation (1.5) admits the group with the generator X . Let us find the model based on the operator

$$Y = Y_4 - Y_6 - \varepsilon Y_5 = x \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - (u + \varepsilon) \frac{\partial}{\partial u} - 2f \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + 2h \frac{\partial}{\partial h}. \quad (3.3)$$

Its projection X defined by (3.1) is

$$X = x \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - (u + \varepsilon) \frac{\partial}{\partial u} \quad (3.4)$$

whereas the projection Z is identical with the operator (3.3).

The invariance conditions for the equations (3.2) with respect to $Z = Y$ are written

$$[Z(f - F(u))]_{f=F(u)} = 0, \quad [Z(h - H(x))]_{h=H(x)} = 0.$$

These equations are written

$$-2F + (u + \epsilon) \frac{dF}{du} = 0, \quad 2H - x \frac{dH}{dx} = 0$$

and yield:

$$f = C(u + \epsilon)^2, \quad h = Kx^2.$$

Let us take $C = 1$, $K = 1$ for the sake of simplicity. Thus, the theorem on projections guarantees that the equation

$$u_t = x^2[u_{xx} + 2(u + \epsilon)u_x] + 4x[u_x + (u + \epsilon)^2] \quad (3.5)$$

admits the two-dimensional Lie algebra spanned by

$$X_1 = \frac{\partial}{\partial t}, \quad X_2 = x \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - (u + \epsilon) \frac{\partial}{\partial u}. \quad (3.6)$$

Let us construct the invariant solution with respect to X_2 . The invariants for X_2 are determined by the equation

$$X_2 J(t, x, u) = 0$$

which is written

$$x \frac{\partial J}{\partial x} - (u + \epsilon) \frac{\partial J}{\partial u} = 0.$$

One solution is

$$J_1 = t.$$

By solving the characteristic equation

$$\frac{dx}{x} + \frac{du}{u + \epsilon} = 0$$

we obtain the second solution

$$J_2 = x(u + \epsilon).$$

The invariant solution is obtained by letting

$$J_2 = \phi(J_1).$$

In other words, we let

$$x(u + \epsilon) = \phi(t)$$

or

$$u = -\varepsilon + \frac{\phi(t)}{x}. \quad (3.7)$$

Substituting (3.7) into (3.5), we obtain

$$\phi' = 2(\phi^2 - \phi),$$

whence

$$\phi = \frac{1}{1 - Ce^{2t}}.$$

Substitution of ϕ in Eq. (3.7) yields

$$u = -\varepsilon + \frac{1}{x(1 - Ce^{2t})}. \quad (3.8)$$

Acknowledgments

This work was done during the visit of the Blekinge Institute of Technology by E.D. Avdonina in September 2010. We thank the Royal Swedish Academy of Engineering Sciences (IVA) for the financial support of the visit.

Bibliography

- [1] A. S. Kompaneets, “The establishment of thermal equilibrium between quanta and electrons,” *Zh. Eksp. Teor. Fiz.*, vol. 31, No. 5(11), pp. 876–885, 1956. English transl., *Soviet Physics JETP*, 4, 1957, p. 730–885.
- [2] N. H. Ibragimov, “Time-dependent exact solutions of the nonlinear kompaneets equation,” *J. Phys. A: Math. Theor.*, vol. 43, 2010. doi:10.1088/1751-8113/43/50/502001.
- [3] N. H. Ibragimov, “Nonlinear self-adjointness in constructing conservation laws,” *Archives of ALGA*, vol. 7/8, pp. 1–99, 2010-2011.
- [4] N. H. Ibragimov, *Selected Works, II*. Karlskrona: ALGA Publications, 2006.

EQUIVALENCE GROUP ANALYSIS OF REACTION-DIFFUSION MODEL

NAIL H. IBRAGIMOV
Department of Mathematics and Science,
Blekinge Institute of Technology, SE-371 79 Karlskrona, Sweden

Abstract. The paper is devoted to investigation of the group of equivalence transformations for one-dimensional reaction-diffusion type models described by an evolution system comprising two second-order nonlinear partial differential equations. The cases of nonlinear and linear cross-diffusion are considered in two separate parts.

Keywords: Excitable systems, Cross-diffusion, Equivalence transformations

PART 1

Excitable systems with nonlinear cross-diffusion

1 Introduction

In this part of the paper we will discuss one-dimensional reaction-diffusion type models with nonlinear cross-diffusion. Specifically, we will consider the system of the form (see, e.g. [1])

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} &= f(u, v) + A \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\phi(u, v) \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \right), \\ \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} &= g(u, v) + B \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\psi(u, v) \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right),\end{aligned}\tag{1.1}$$

where four undetermined functions f, g, ϕ, ψ of two variables and two undetermined constants (parameters) A, B provide six “arbitrary elements” of the model.

We identify equivalence transformations of the system (1.1) with changes of the variables t, x, u, v and transformations of the arbitrary elements mapping the system (1.1) into a system of the same form. Thus, one-parameter continuous groups of equiv-

alence transformations (depending on a group parameter a) have the form

$$\begin{aligned}
\bar{t} &= \bar{t}(t, x, u, v, a), & \bar{x} &= \bar{x}(t, x, u, v, a), \\
\bar{u} &= \bar{u}(t, x, u, v, a), & \bar{v} &= \bar{v}(t, x, u, v, a), \\
\bar{f} &= \bar{f}(t, x, u, v, f, g, \phi, \psi, A, B, a), \\
\bar{g} &= \bar{g}(t, x, u, v, f, g, \phi, \psi, A, B, a), \\
\bar{\phi} &= \bar{\phi}(t, x, u, v, f, g, \phi, \psi, A, B, a), \\
\bar{\psi} &= \bar{\psi}(t, x, u, v, f, g, \phi, \psi, A, B, a), \\
\bar{A} &= \bar{A}(t, x, u, v, f, g, \phi, \psi, A, B, a), \\
\bar{B} &= \bar{B}(t, x, u, v, f, g, \phi, \psi, A, B, a)
\end{aligned} \tag{1.2}$$

and map the system (1.1) into the following system:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{t}} &= \bar{f}(\bar{u}, \bar{v}) + \bar{A} \frac{\partial^2 \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{x}^2} + \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{x}} \left(\bar{\phi}(\bar{u}, \bar{v}) \frac{\partial \bar{v}}{\partial \bar{x}} \right), \\
\frac{\partial \bar{v}}{\partial \bar{t}} &= \bar{g}(\bar{u}, \bar{v}) + \bar{B} \frac{\partial^2 \bar{v}}{\partial \bar{x}^2} + \frac{\partial}{\partial \bar{x}} \left(\bar{\psi}(\bar{u}, \bar{v}) \frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{x}} \right),
\end{aligned} \tag{1.1'}$$

where the functions $\bar{f}(\bar{u}, \bar{v}), \dots, \bar{\psi}(\bar{u}, \bar{v})$ and the constants \bar{A}, \bar{B} may differ from the corresponding functions and constants in the original system (1.1).

Remark 1.1. Generally speaking, the transformed values $\bar{t}, \bar{x}, \bar{u}, \bar{v}$ of the physical variables may also depend upon the ‘‘arbitrary elements’’ f, \dots, B . But we will restrict our consideration to transformations of the form (1.2).

Remark 1.2. The question on nonlinear self-adjointness of the system (1.1) is investigated in [2], Section 5.

2 Equivalence group and determining equations

2.1 Notation

The following notation will be convenient in general calculations:

$$\mathbf{x} = (x^1, x^2), \quad \mathbf{u} = (u^1, u^2), \quad \mathbf{y} = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}), \tag{2.1}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
x^1 &= t, & x^2 &= x, & u^1 &= u, & u^2 &= v, \\
y^1 &= t, & y^2 &= x, & y^3 &= u, & y^4 &= v.
\end{aligned} \tag{2.2}$$

The arbitrary elements of the model (1.1) will be written in the form

$$F = (f^1, f^2, f^3, f^4, f^5, f^6), \quad (2.3)$$

where

$$f^1 = f, f^2 = g, f^3 = \phi, f^4 = \psi, f^5 = A, f^6 = B. \quad (2.4)$$

The generator of the group of equivalence transformations (1.2) has the form

$$\begin{aligned} Y = & \xi^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \xi^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \eta^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + \eta^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + \mu^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial f} \\ & + \mu^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial g} + \mu^3 \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} + \mu^4 \frac{\partial}{\partial \psi} + \mu^5 \frac{\partial}{\partial A} + \mu^6 \frac{\partial}{\partial B}, \end{aligned} \quad (2.5)$$

or, using the notation (2.4), in the compact form

$$Y = \xi^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} + \eta^i \frac{\partial}{\partial u^i} + \mu^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial f^\alpha}, \quad (2.5')$$

where the summation is taken over $i = 1, 2$ and $\alpha = 1, \dots, 6$. The coefficients are

$$\xi^i = \xi^i(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}), \quad \eta^i = \eta^i(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}), \quad i = 1, 2,$$

and

$$\mu^\alpha = \mu^\alpha(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}, F), \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, 6.$$

2.2 Extended form of Equations (1.1)

It is convenient to write Eqs. (1.1) in the form

$$\begin{aligned} D_t(u) &= AD_x^2(u) + D_x[\phi(u, v)D_x(v)] + f(u, v), \\ D_t(v) &= BD_x^2(v) + D_x[\psi(u, u)D_x(u)] + g(u, v), \end{aligned} \quad (2.6)$$

using the operators of total differentiation

$$\begin{aligned} D_t &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + u_t \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + v_t \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + u_{tt} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_t} + u_{tx} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_x} + v_{tt} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t} + v_{tx} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_x} + \dots, \\ D_x &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + u_x \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + v_x \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + u_{tx} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_t} + u_{xx} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_x} + v_{tx} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t} + v_{xx} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_x} + \dots \end{aligned} \quad (2.7)$$

where D_x^2 is the repeated action of the operator D_x , e.g.

$$D_x^2(u) = D_x(D_x(u)) = D_x(u_x) = u_{xx}.$$

Thus, Eqs. (1.1) are written:

$$\begin{aligned} u_t &= Au_{xx} + \phi(u, v)v_{xx} + [\phi_u u_x + \phi_v v_x] v_x + f(u, v), \\ v_t &= Bv_{xx} + \psi(u, v)u_{xx} + [\psi_u u_x + \psi_v v_x] u_x + g(u, v), \end{aligned} \quad (2.8)$$

where $\phi_u, \phi_v, \psi_u, \psi_v$ denote the partial derivatives, e.g.

$$\phi_u = \frac{\partial \phi(u, v)}{\partial u}, \quad \phi_v = \frac{\partial \phi(u, v)}{\partial v}.$$

Furthermore, in order to calculate the equivalence generators, we write Eqs. (2.8) in the following *extended form*:

$$u_t - Au_{xx} - \phi v_{xx} - \phi_u u_x v_x - \phi_v v_x^2 - f = 0, \quad (2.9)$$

$$v_t - Bv_{xx} - \psi u_{xx} - \psi_u u_x^2 - \psi_v u_x v_x - g = 0, \quad (2.10)$$

$$f_t = f_x = 0, \quad g_t = g_x = 0, \quad (2.11)$$

$$\phi_t = \phi_x = 0, \quad \psi_t = \psi_x = 0, \quad (2.12)$$

$$A_t = A_x = A_u = A_v = 0, \quad (2.13)$$

$$B_t = B_x = B_u = B_v = 0. \quad (2.14)$$

Eqs. (2.11)-(2.12) guarantee that the functions f, g, ϕ, ψ do not depend upon the variables t, x , whereas Eqs. (2.13)-(2.14) show that A and B are independent on all physical variables t, x, u, v .

Remark 2.1. Using the notation (2.2), (2.4), Eqs. (2.11)-(2.14) can be written

$$f_\sigma^\alpha = 0, \quad (\alpha = 1, 2, 3, 4; \quad \sigma = 1, 2), \quad (2.15)$$

$$f_\sigma^\alpha = 0, \quad (\alpha = 5, 6; \quad \sigma = 1, 2, 3, 4). \quad (2.16)$$

2.3 Determining equations

A convenient approach to calculation of equivalence transformation groups has been suggested in [3]. According to this approach (see also [4] or [5], Paper 5, and [6], [7]), a one-parameter group of transformations (1.2) is a group of equivalence transformations for Eqs. (1.1) if it leaves invariant the extended system (2.9)-(2.14). Then the usual infinitesimal invariance test yields that the *prolonged generator* \tilde{Y} of the equivalence

group (1.2) should satisfy the equations

$$\tilde{Y}(u_t - Au_{xx} - \phi v_{xx} - \phi_u u_x v_x - \phi_v v_x^2 - f) = 0, \quad (2.17)$$

$$\tilde{Y}(v_t - Bv_{xx} - \psi u_{xx} - \psi_u u_x^2 - \psi_v u_x v_x - g) = 0, \quad (2.18)$$

$$\tilde{Y}(f_t) = \tilde{Y}(f_x) = 0, \quad \tilde{Y}(g_t) = \tilde{Y}(g_x) = 0, \quad (2.19)$$

$$\tilde{Y}(\phi_t) = \tilde{Y}(\phi_x) = 0, \quad \tilde{Y}(\psi_t) = \tilde{Y}(\psi_x) = 0, \quad (2.20)$$

$$\tilde{Y}(A_t) = \tilde{Y}(A_x) = \tilde{Y}(A_u) = \tilde{Y}(A_v) = 0, \quad (2.21)$$

$$\tilde{Y}(B_t) = \tilde{Y}(B_x) = \tilde{Y}(B_u) = \tilde{Y}(B_v) = 0 \quad (2.22)$$

on the system (2.9)-(2.14), where

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{Y} = & \xi^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \xi^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \eta^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + \eta^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + \mu^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + \mu^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial g} + \mu^3 \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} + \mu^4 \frac{\partial}{\partial \psi} \\ & + \mu^5 \frac{\partial}{\partial A} + \mu^6 \frac{\partial}{\partial B} + \zeta_1^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial u_t} + \zeta_2^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial u_x} + \zeta_1^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t} + \zeta_2^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial v_x} + \zeta_{22}^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{xx}} \\ & + \zeta_{22}^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial v_{xx}} + \omega_1^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial f_t} + \omega_2^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial f_x} + \omega_1^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial g_t} + \omega_2^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial g_x} + \omega_1^3 \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi_t} + \omega_2^3 \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi_x} \\ & + \omega_1^4 \frac{\partial}{\partial \psi_t} + \omega_2^4 \frac{\partial}{\partial \psi_x} + \omega_1^5 \frac{\partial}{\partial A_t} + \omega_2^5 \frac{\partial}{\partial A_x} + \omega_3^5 \frac{\partial}{\partial A_u} + \omega_4^5 \frac{\partial}{\partial A_v} \\ & + \omega_1^6 \frac{\partial}{\partial B_t} + \omega_2^6 \frac{\partial}{\partial B_x} + \omega_3^6 \frac{\partial}{\partial B_u} + \omega_4^6 \frac{\partial}{\partial B_v}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.23)$$

In computing the coefficients $\zeta_1^1, \zeta_2^1, \zeta_1^2, \zeta_2^2, \zeta_{22}^1, \zeta_{22}^2$ and $\omega_1^1, \dots, \omega_4^6$ it is convenient to use the operator (2.23) in the compact form (see the notation (2.4))

$$\tilde{Y} = Y + \zeta_1^i \frac{\partial}{\partial u_t^i} + \zeta_2^i \frac{\partial}{\partial u_x^i} + \zeta_{22}^i \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{xx}^i} + \omega_\sigma^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial f_\sigma^\alpha}. \quad (2.24)$$

Here Y is the operator (2.5') and the coordinates ζ_1^i, ζ_{22}^i ($i = 1, 2$) are given by the usual *prolongation formulae* (see the notation (2.2)):

$$\zeta_1^i = D_t(\eta^i) - u_t^i D_t(\xi^1) - u_x^i D_t(\xi^2), \quad (2.25)$$

$$\zeta_2^i = D_x(\eta^i) - u_t^i D_x(\xi^1) - u_x^i D_x(\xi^2), \quad (2.26)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta_{22}^i &= D_x(\zeta_2^i) - u_{tx}^i D_x(\xi^1) - u_{xx}^i D_x(\xi^2) \\ &= D_x^2(\eta^i) - u_t^i D_x^2(\xi^1) - u_x^i D_x^2(\xi^2) - 2u_{tx}^i D_x(\xi^1) - 2u_{xx}^i D_x(\xi^2), \end{aligned} \quad (2.27)$$

where D_t, D_x are the total differentiations (2.7) and D_x^2 is the repeated action of the operator D_x , e.g. $D_x^2(\eta^i) = D_x(D_x(\eta^i))$.

The coordinates ω_σ^α ($\alpha = 1, \dots, 6$; $\sigma = 1, \dots, 4$) of the operator (2.24) are given by (compare with the prolongation formulae (2.25)-(2.26))

$$\omega_\sigma^\alpha = \tilde{D}_\sigma(\mu^\alpha) - f_t^\alpha \tilde{D}_\sigma(\xi^1) - f_x^\alpha \tilde{D}_\sigma(\xi^2) - f_u^\alpha \tilde{D}_\sigma(\eta^1) - f_v^\alpha \tilde{D}_\sigma(\eta^2), \quad (2.28)$$

where (compare with (2.7) and see the notation (2.2) for y^σ)

$$\tilde{D}_\sigma = \frac{\partial}{\partial y^\sigma} + f_\sigma^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial f^\alpha}, \quad \sigma = 1, \dots, 4. \quad (2.29)$$

In (2.24) and (2.29) we use the notation

$$f_\sigma^\alpha = \frac{\partial f^\alpha}{\partial y^\sigma}, \quad \sigma = 1, \dots, 4,$$

so that, according to the notation (2.2) for y^σ , we have:

$$f_1^\alpha = f_t^\alpha, \quad f_2^\alpha = f_x^\alpha, \quad f_3^\alpha = f_u^\alpha, \quad f_4^\alpha = f_v^\alpha.$$

Using the expression (2.23) for the operator \tilde{Y} in Eqs. (2.17)-(2.22) we obtain the following *determining equations for the equivalence generators*:

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta_1^1 - A\zeta_{22}^1 - u_{xx}\mu^5 - \phi\zeta_{22}^2 - v_{xx}\mu^3 - (v_x\zeta_2^1 + u_x\zeta_2^2)\phi_u \\ - \omega_3^3 u_x v_x - 2\phi_v v_x \zeta_2^2 - v_x^2 \omega_4^3 - \mu^1 = 0, \end{aligned} \quad (2.30)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta_1^2 - B\zeta_{22}^2 - v_{xx}\mu^6 - \psi\zeta_{22}^1 - u_{xx}\mu^4 - (v_x\zeta_2^1 + u_x\zeta_2^2)\psi_v \\ - \omega_4^4 u_x v_x - 2\psi_u u_x \zeta_2^1 - u_x^2 \omega_3^4 - \mu^2 = 0, \end{aligned} \quad (2.31)$$

$$\omega_\sigma^\alpha = 0, \quad (\alpha = 1, 2, 3, 4; \quad \sigma = 1, 2), \quad (2.32)$$

$$\omega_\sigma^\alpha = 0, \quad (\alpha = 5, 6; \quad \sigma = 1, 2, 3, 4), \quad (2.33)$$

where $\zeta_1^i, \zeta_2^i, \zeta_{22}^i$ ($i = 1, 2$) and ω_σ^α are given by (2.25)-(2.27) and (2.28), respectively. Eqs. (2.30)-(2.33) are termed the *determining equations* because they determine the generators (2.5) of the maximal continuous group of equivalence transformations (1.2) for the system (1.1).

3 Preliminary analysis of determining equations

3.1 Integration of equations $\omega_\sigma^\alpha = 0$

Since Eqs. (2.17)-(2.22) should be satisfied upon evaluating their left-hand sides on the system (2.9)-(2.14), it suffices to write the operators (2.29) by taking into account

the equations (2.11)-(2.14). Then, denoting

$$\tilde{D}_1 = \tilde{D}_t, \quad \tilde{D}_2 = \tilde{D}_x, \quad \tilde{D}_3 = \tilde{D}_u, \quad \tilde{D}_4 = \tilde{D}_v \quad (3.1)$$

and invoking the notation (2.2), (2.4) we will have:

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{D}_t &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}, & \tilde{D}_u &= \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + f_u \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + g_u \frac{\partial}{\partial g} + \phi_u \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} + \psi_u \frac{\partial}{\partial \psi}, \\ \tilde{D}_x &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, & \tilde{D}_v &= \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + f_v \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + g_v \frac{\partial}{\partial g} + \phi_v \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} + \psi_v \frac{\partial}{\partial \psi}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.2)$$

Therefore, using Eqs. (2.11)-(2.14) and notation (2.4), we obtain from (2.28):

$$\omega_\sigma^\alpha = \tilde{D}_\sigma(\mu^\alpha) - f_u^\alpha \tilde{D}_\sigma(\eta^1) - f_v^\alpha \tilde{D}_\sigma(\eta^2), \quad (\alpha = 1, 2, 3, 4), \quad (3.3)$$

$$\omega_\sigma^\alpha = \tilde{D}_\sigma(\mu^\alpha), \quad (\alpha = 5, 6). \quad (3.4)$$

If we take $\alpha = 1$ and compute (3.3) for $\sigma = 1$ and $\sigma = 2$ by using Eqs. (2.4), (3.1), (3.2), we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} \omega_1^1 &= \tilde{D}_t(\mu^1) - f_u \tilde{D}_t(\eta^1) - f_v \tilde{D}_t(\eta^2) = \mu_t^1 - f_u \eta_t^1 - f_v \eta_t^2, \\ \omega_2^1 &= \tilde{D}_x(\mu^1) - f_u \tilde{D}_x(\eta^1) - f_v \tilde{D}_x(\eta^2) = \mu_x^1 - f_u \eta_x^1 - f_v \eta_x^2. \end{aligned}$$

Making similar calculations for $\alpha = 2, 3, 4$, we conclude that

$$\begin{aligned} \omega_1^1 &= \mu_t^1 - f_u \eta_t^1 - f_v \eta_t^2, & \omega_2^1 &= \mu_x^1 - f_u \eta_x^1 - f_v \eta_x^2, \\ \omega_1^2 &= \mu_t^2 - g_u \eta_t^1 - g_v \eta_t^2, & \omega_2^2 &= \mu_x^2 - g_u \eta_x^1 - g_v \eta_x^2, \\ \omega_1^3 &= \mu_t^3 - \phi_u \eta_t^1 - \phi_v \eta_t^2, & \omega_2^3 &= \mu_x^3 - \phi_u \eta_x^1 - \phi_v \eta_x^2, \\ \omega_1^4 &= \mu_t^4 - \psi_u \eta_t^1 - \psi_v \eta_t^2, & \omega_2^4 &= \mu_x^4 - \psi_u \eta_x^1 - \psi_v \eta_x^2. \end{aligned} \quad (3.5)$$

Substituting (3.5) in Eqs. (2.32) we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} \mu_t^1 - f_u \eta_t^1 - f_v \eta_t^2 &= 0, & \mu_x^1 - f_u \eta_x^1 - f_v \eta_x^2 &= 0, \\ \mu_t^2 - g_u \eta_t^1 - g_v \eta_t^2 &= 0, & \mu_x^2 - g_u \eta_x^1 - g_v \eta_x^2 &= 0, \\ \mu_t^3 - \phi_u \eta_t^1 - \phi_v \eta_t^2 &= 0, & \mu_x^3 - \phi_u \eta_x^1 - \phi_v \eta_x^2 &= 0, \\ \mu_t^4 - \psi_u \eta_t^1 - \psi_v \eta_t^2 &= 0, & \mu_x^4 - \psi_u \eta_x^1 - \psi_v \eta_x^2 &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (3.6)$$

Since η^i, μ^i do not depend upon $f_u, f_v, g_u, g_v, \phi_u, \phi_v, \psi_u, \psi_v$, Eqs. (3.6) yield

$$\begin{aligned} \eta_t^1 &= \eta_x^1 = 0, & \eta_t^2 &= \eta_x^2 = 0, \\ \mu_t^1 &= \mu_x^1 = 0, & \mu_t^2 &= \mu_x^2 = 0, \\ \mu_t^3 &= \mu_x^3 = 0, & \mu_t^4 &= \mu_x^4 = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (3.7)$$

Likewise, using (3.4) and invoking Eqs. (2.4), (3.1), (3.2), one obtains

$$\begin{aligned}\omega_1^\alpha &= \mu_t^\alpha, & \omega_2^\alpha &= \mu_x^\alpha, \\ \omega_3^\alpha &= \mu_u^\alpha + f_u \mu_f^\alpha + g_u \mu_g^\alpha + \phi_u \mu_\phi^\alpha + \psi_u \mu_\psi^\alpha, \\ \omega_4^\alpha &= \mu_v^\alpha + f_v \mu_f^\alpha + g_v \mu_g^\alpha + \phi_v \mu_\phi^\alpha + \psi_v \mu_\psi^\alpha\end{aligned}\tag{3.8}$$

for $\alpha = 5, 6$. Substituting (3.8) in Eqs. (2.33) and reasoning as above, one obtains:

$$\mu_t^\alpha = \mu_x^\alpha = \mu_u^\alpha = \mu_v^\alpha = \mu_f^\alpha = \mu_g^\alpha = \mu_\phi^\alpha = \mu_\psi^\alpha = 0, \quad (\alpha = 5, 6).\tag{3.9}$$

Thus, we have completed the integration of Eqs. (2.32), (2.33). The result is given by Eqs. (3.7) and (3.9). It remains to solve Eqs. (2.30), (2.31).

3.2 Simplifications derived from Equations (2.30), (2.31)

We turn now to Eqs. (2.30), (2.31). First, we will single out in Eqs. (2.30), (2.31) the terms containing u_{tx} and v_{tx} . It is manifest from the prolongation formulae (2.25)-(2.27) that they are involved only in ζ_{22}^1 and ζ_{22}^2 given by (2.27), namely:

$$\zeta_{22}^1 = -2D_x(\xi^1) u_{tx} + \dots, \quad \zeta_{22}^2 = -2D_x(\xi^1) v_{tx} + \dots.$$

Substituting these expressions in (2.30), (2.31) and nullifying the coefficients for u_{tx} and v_{tx} we obtain the equations

$$AD_x(\xi^1) = 0, \quad BD_x(\xi^1) = 0, \quad \phi D_x(\xi^1) = 0, \quad \psi D_x(\xi^1) = 0.$$

Since the parameters A , B and functions ϕ , ψ are arbitrary, these equations yield

$$D_x(\xi^1) = 0.\tag{3.10}$$

Writing Eq. (3.10) in the expanded form (see the definition of D_x in (2.7))

$$\xi_x^1 + u_x \xi_u^1 + v_x \xi_v^1 = 0,$$

we obtain

$$\xi_x^1 = \xi_u^1 = \xi_v^1 = 0.\tag{3.11}$$

Now we will single out in Eqs. (2.30), (2.31) the terms involving

$$u_x u_{xx}, \quad v_x u_{xx}, \quad u_x v_{xx}, \quad v_x v_{xx}.\tag{3.12}$$

They are contained in $\zeta_{22}^1, \zeta_{22}^2$ and will also appear in ζ_1^1, ζ_1^2 after eliminating u_t, v_t by using Eqs. (2.9), (2.10). Namely, keeping in (2.27) the terms that may contain the quantities of our interest and invoking Eq. (3.10), we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}\zeta_{22}^1 &= -u_x D_x^2(\xi^2) - 2u_{xx} D_x(\xi^2) + \dots \\ &= -u_x (u_{xx} \xi_u^2 + v_{xx} \xi_v^2) - 2u_{xx} (u_x \xi_u^2 + v_x \xi_v^2) + \dots,\end{aligned}\tag{3.13}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\zeta_{22}^2 &= -v_x D_x^2(\xi^2) - 2v_{xx} D_x(\xi^2) + \dots \\ &= -v_x (u_{xx} \xi_u^2 + v_{xx} \xi_v^2) - 2v_{xx} (u_x \xi_u^2 + v_x \xi_v^2) + \dots\end{aligned}\quad (3.14)$$

Furthermore, we have:

$$\begin{aligned}\zeta_1^1 &= -u_x D_t(\xi^2) + \dots = -u_x (u_t \xi_u^2 + v_t \xi_v^2) + \dots \\ &= -u_x \xi_u^2 (A u_{xx} + \phi v_{xx}) - u_x \xi_v^2 (B v_{xx} + \psi u_{xx}) + \dots,\end{aligned}\quad (3.15)$$

and likewise

$$\zeta_1^2 = -v_x \xi_u^2 (A u_{xx} + \phi v_{xx}) - v_x \xi_v^2 (B v_{xx} + \psi u_{xx}) + \dots\quad (3.16)$$

Substituting (3.13)-(3.16) in the left-hand sides of Eqs. (2.30), (2.31) we obtain the following terms containing the quantities (3.12):

$$\begin{aligned}\zeta_1^1 - A \zeta_{22}^1 - \phi \zeta_{22}^2 &= 3\phi \xi_v^2 v_x v_{xx} + (2A \xi_u^2 - \psi \xi_v^2) u_x u_{xx} \\ &+ (\phi \xi_u^2 + 2A \xi_v^2) v_x u_{xx} + [\phi \xi_u^2 + (A - B) \xi_v^2] u_x v_{xx} + \dots,\end{aligned}\quad (3.17)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\zeta_1^2 - B \zeta_{22}^2 - \psi \zeta_{22}^1 &= 3\psi \xi_u^2 u_x u_{xx} + (2B \xi_v^2 - \phi \xi_u^2) v_x v_{xx} \\ &+ (\psi \xi_v^2 + 2B \xi_u^2) u_x v_{xx} + [\psi \xi_v^2 + (B - A) \xi_u^2] v_x u_{xx} + \dots.\end{aligned}\quad (3.18)$$

Eqs. (2.30), (2.31) are satisfied identically upon eliminating u_t and v_t . Therefore we nullify the coefficients of quantities (3.12) in (3.17), (3.18) and obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}\phi \xi_v^2 &= 0, & \phi \xi_u^2 + (A - B) \xi_v^2 &= 0, \\ 2A \xi_u^2 - \psi \xi_v^2 &= 0, & \phi \xi_u^2 + 2A \xi_v^2 &= 0;\end{aligned}\quad (3.19)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\psi \xi_u^2 &= 0, & \psi \xi_v^2 + (B - A) \xi_u^2 &= 0, \\ 2B \xi_v^2 - \phi \xi_u^2 &= 0, & \psi \xi_v^2 + 2B \xi_u^2 &= 0.\end{aligned}\quad (3.20)$$

Since A , B , ϕ , ψ are arbitrary elements, Eqs. (3.19), (3.20) yield

$$\xi_u^2 = \xi_v^2 = 0.\quad (3.21)$$

3.3 Results of preliminary analysis

Collecting Eqs. (3.7), (3.9), (3.11) and (3.21), obtained above by a preliminary analysis of the determining equations (2.30)-(2.33), we obtain the equations

$$\begin{aligned}\xi_x^1 &= \xi_u^1 = \xi_v^1 = 0, & \xi_u^2 &= \xi_v^2 = 0, \\ \eta_t^1 &= \eta_x^1 = 0, & \eta_t^2 &= \eta_x^2 = 0;\end{aligned}\quad (3.22)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\mu_t^\alpha &= \mu_x^\alpha = 0, & (\alpha &= 1, 2, 3, 4), \\ \mu_t^\alpha &= \mu_x^\alpha = \mu_u^\alpha = \mu_v^\alpha = \mu_f^\alpha = \mu_g^\alpha = \mu_\phi^\alpha = \mu_\psi^\alpha = 0, & (\alpha &= 5, 6).\end{aligned}\quad (3.23)$$

Remark 3.1. The equations (3.22), (3.23) yield:

$$\xi^1 = \xi^1(t), \quad \xi^2 = \xi^2(t, x), \quad \eta^1 = \eta^1(u, v), \quad \eta^2 = \eta^2(u, v), \quad (3.24)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mu^\alpha &= \mu^\alpha(u, v, f, g, \phi, \psi, A, B), & (\alpha = 1, 2, 3, 4), \\ \mu^\alpha &= \mu^\alpha(A, B), & (\alpha = 5, 6). \end{aligned} \quad (3.25)$$

4 Solution of determining equations

4.1 Determining equations after simplification

Substituting (3.24) in the prolongation formulae (2.25), (2.26) we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta_1^1 &= D_t(\eta^1) - u_t D_t(\xi^1) - u_x D_t(\xi^2) = (\eta_u^1 - \xi_t^1)u_t + \eta_v^1 v_t - \xi_t^2 u_x, \\ \zeta_1^2 &= D_t(\eta^2) - v_t D_t(\xi^1) - v_x D_t(\xi^2) = \eta_u^2 u_t + (\eta_v^2 - \xi_t^1)v_t - \xi_t^2 v_x, \end{aligned} \quad (4.1)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta_2^1 &= D_x(\eta^1) - u_x D_x(\xi^2) = (\eta_u^1 - \xi_x^2)u_x + \eta_v^1 v_x, \\ \zeta_2^2 &= D_x(\eta^2) - v_x D_x(\xi^2) = \eta_u^2 u_x + (\eta_v^2 - \xi_x^2)v_x. \end{aligned} \quad (4.2)$$

The formula (2.27) is simplified likewise. Namely, since $D_x(\xi^1) = 0$, it is written

$$\zeta_{22}^i = D_x^2(\eta^i) - u_x^i D_x^2(\xi^2) - 2u_{xx}^i D_x(\xi^2). \quad (4.3)$$

Furthermore, it follows from (3.24) that

$$\begin{aligned} D_x(\xi^2) &= \xi_x^2, \quad D_x^2(\xi^2) = \xi_{xx}^2, \\ D_x(\eta^i) &= \eta_u^i u_x + \eta_v^i v_x, \\ D_x^2(\eta^i) &= \eta_{uu}^i u_{xx} + \eta_{vv}^i v_{xx} + \eta_{uv}^i u_x^2 + 2\eta_{uv}^i u_x v_x + \eta_{vv}^i v_x^2. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore (4.3) yields:

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta_{22}^1 &= (\eta_u^1 - 2\xi_x^2)u_{xx} + \eta_v^1 v_{xx} + \eta_{uu}^1 u_x^2 + 2\eta_{uv}^1 u_x v_x + \eta_{vv}^1 v_x^2 - \xi_{xx}^2 u_x, \\ \zeta_{22}^2 &= \eta_u^2 u_{xx} + (\eta_v^2 - 2\xi_x^2)v_{xx} + \eta_{uu}^2 u_x^2 + 2\eta_{uv}^2 u_x v_x + \eta_{vv}^2 v_x^2 - \xi_{xx}^2 v_x. \end{aligned} \quad (4.4)$$

After substituting (4.1), (4.2), (4.4) and eliminating u_t, v_t by using Eqs. (2.9),

(2.10), the determining equations (2.30) and (2.31) become

$$\begin{aligned}
& (\eta_u^1 - \xi_t^1)(Au_{xx} + \phi v_{xx} + \phi_u u_x v_x + \phi_v v_x^2 + f) \\
& + \eta_v^1(Bv_{xx} + \psi u_{xx} + \psi_u u_x^2 + \psi_v u_x v_x + g) - \xi_t^2 u_x \\
& - A[(\eta_u^1 - 2\xi_x^2)u_{xx} + \eta_v^1 v_{xx} + \eta_{uu}^1 u_x^2 + 2\eta_{uv}^1 u_x v_x + \eta_{vv}^1 v_x^2 - \xi_{xx}^2 u_x] \\
& - \phi[\eta_u^2 u_{xx} + (\eta_v^2 - 2\xi_x^2)v_{xx} + \eta_{uu}^2 u_x^2 + 2\eta_{uv}^2 u_x v_x + \eta_{vv}^2 v_x^2 - \xi_{xx}^2 v_x] \\
& - \phi_u[(\eta_u^1 + \eta_v^2 - 2\xi_x^2)u_x v_x + \eta_v^1 v_x^2 + \eta_u^2 u_x^2] - 2\phi_v[\eta_u^2 u_x v_x + (\eta_v^2 - \xi_x^2)v_x^2] \\
& - \mu^5 u_{xx} - \mu^3 v_{xx} - \omega_3^3 u_x v_x - \omega_4^3 v_x^2 - \mu^1 = 0
\end{aligned} \tag{4.5}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
& (\eta_v^2 - \xi_t^1)(Bv_{xx} + \psi u_{xx} + \psi_u u_x^2 + \psi_v u_x v_x + g) \\
& + \eta_u^2(Au_{xx} + \phi v_{xx} + \phi_u u_x v_x + \phi_v v_x^2 + f) - \xi_t^2 v_x \\
& - B[\eta_u^2 u_{xx} + (\eta_v^2 - 2\xi_x^2)v_{xx} + \eta_{uu}^2 u_x^2 + 2\eta_{uv}^2 u_x v_x + \eta_{vv}^2 v_x^2 - \xi_{xx}^2 v_x] \\
& - \psi[(\eta_u^1 - 2\xi_x^2)u_{xx} + \eta_v^1 v_{xx} + \eta_{uu}^1 u_x^2 + 2\eta_{uv}^1 u_x v_x + \eta_{vv}^1 v_x^2 - \xi_{xx}^2 u_x] \\
& - \psi_v[(\eta_u^1 + \eta_v^2 - 2\xi_x^2)u_x v_x + \eta_v^1 v_x^2 + \eta_u^2 u_x^2] - 2\psi_u[\eta_v^1 u_x v_x + (\eta_u^1 - \xi_x^2)u_x^2] \\
& - \mu^6 v_{xx} - \mu^4 u_{xx} - \omega_3^4 u_x^2 - \omega_4^4 u_x v_x - \mu^2 = 0,
\end{aligned} \tag{4.6}$$

respectively. We have to substitute here the expressions for the quantities $\omega_3^3, \omega_4^3, \omega_3^4$ and ω_4^4 . Using (3.3), (2.4), (3.1), (3.2) and (3.24), (3.25), one obtains

$$\begin{aligned}
\omega_3^3 &= \tilde{D}_u(\mu^3) - \phi_u \tilde{D}_u(\eta^1) - \phi_v \tilde{D}_u(\eta^2) \\
&= \mu_u^3 + f_u \mu_f^3 + g_u \mu_g^3 + \phi_u \mu_\phi^3 + \psi_u \mu_\psi^3 - \phi_u \eta_u^1 - \phi_v \eta_u^2.
\end{aligned}$$

The other three quantities are computed likewise, and we have:

$$\begin{aligned}
\omega_3^3 &= \mu_u^3 + f_u \mu_f^3 + g_u \mu_g^3 + \phi_u \mu_\phi^3 + \psi_u \mu_\psi^3 - \phi_u \eta_u^1 - \phi_v \eta_u^2, \\
\omega_4^3 &= \mu_v^3 + f_v \mu_f^3 + g_v \mu_g^3 + \phi_v \mu_\phi^3 + \psi_v \mu_\psi^3 - \phi_u \eta_v^1 - \phi_v \eta_v^2, \\
\omega_3^4 &= \mu_u^4 + f_u \mu_f^4 + g_u \mu_g^4 + \phi_u \mu_\phi^4 + \psi_u \mu_\psi^4 - \psi_u \eta_u^1 - \psi_v \eta_u^2, \\
\omega_4^4 &= \mu_v^4 + f_v \mu_f^4 + g_v \mu_g^4 + \phi_v \mu_\phi^4 + \psi_v \mu_\psi^4 - \psi_u \eta_v^1 - \psi_v \eta_v^2.
\end{aligned} \tag{4.7}$$

Eqs. (4.5)-(4.6) should be satisfied identically in the variables $f_u, f_v, \dots, \psi_u, \psi_v$ and u_x, v_x, u_{xx}, v_{xx} . Since the unknown functions ξ, η and μ do not depend upon these variables, we split Eqs. (4.5) and (4.6) in the usual way. Let us substitute (4.7) in (4.5) and collect the terms with f_u, f_v, g_u, g_v . We have:

$$-(f_u u_x v_x + f_v v_x^2) \mu_f^3 - (g_u u_x v_x + g_v v_x^2) \mu_g^3.$$

The similar terms involved in Eq. (4.6) are

$$-(f_u u_x^2 + f_v u_x v_x) \mu_f^4 - (g_u u_x^2 + g_v u_x v_x) \mu_g^4.$$

Since these terms should vanish identically in $f_u, f_v, g_u, g_v, u_x, v_x$, we obtain:

$$\mu_f^3 = 0, \quad \mu_g^3 = 0, \quad \mu_f^4 = 0, \quad \mu_g^4 = 0. \quad (4.8)$$

Likewise, taking into account Eqs. (4.7) and collecting the terms with ϕ_u in (4.5), we see that ϕ_u is involved with the coefficient

$$(\eta_u^1 - \eta_v^2 + 2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1 - \mu_\phi^3) u_x v_x - \eta_u^2 u_x^2.$$

Hence, Eq. (4.5) yields:

$$\eta_u^2 = 0, \quad \mu_\phi^3 = \eta_u^1 - \eta_v^2 + 2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1. \quad (4.9)$$

The terms with ϕ_v in (4.5) vanish due to Eqs. (4.9). It is easy to see that the terms with ϕ_u in (4.6) appear now with the coefficient $-\mu_\phi^4 u_x^2$, and hence

$$\mu_\phi^4 = 0. \quad (4.10)$$

The terms with ϕ_v in (4.6) vanish. The similar inspection of the terms with ψ_u, ψ_v yields the following equations:

$$\eta_v^1 = 0, \quad \mu_\psi^3 = 0, \quad \mu_\psi^4 = \eta_v^2 - \eta_u^1 + 2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1. \quad (4.11)$$

Eqs. (4.8)-(4.11) reduce the expressions (4.7) for $\omega_3^3, \omega_4^3, \omega_3^4, \omega_4^4$ to the following:

$$\begin{aligned} \omega_3^3 &= \mu_u^3 + (2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1 - \eta_v^2) \phi_u, \\ \omega_4^3 &= \mu_v^3 + (2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1 + \eta_u^1 - 2\eta_v^2) \phi_v, \\ \omega_3^4 &= \mu_u^4 + (2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1 + \eta_v^2 - 2\eta_u^1) \psi_u, \\ \omega_4^4 &= \mu_v^4 + (2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1 - \eta_u^1) \psi_v. \end{aligned} \quad (4.12)$$

Furthermore, nullifying the terms with u_{xx} and v_{xx} we arrive at the equations

$$\begin{aligned} \mu^3 &= (2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1 + \eta_u^1 - \eta_v^2) \phi, \\ \mu^4 &= (2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1 + \eta_v^2 - \eta_u^1) \psi, \\ \mu^5 &= (2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1) A, \\ \mu^6 &= (2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1) B. \end{aligned} \quad (4.13)$$

Note that the first two equations (4.13) are compatible with Eqs. (4.9)-(4.11).

Thus we have eliminated in Eqs. (4.5)-(4.6) the terms with

$$f_u, f_v, g_u, g_v, \phi_u, \phi_v, \psi_u, \psi_v, u_{xx}, v_{xx}.$$

4.2 Integration of determining equations

Using the results of Section 4.1, we can write the determining equations (4.5)-(4.6) as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} (\eta_u^1 - \xi_t^1)f + (A\xi_{xx}^2 - \xi_t^2)u_x + \phi\xi_{xx}^2 v_x - A\eta_{uu}^1 u_x^2 \\ - (\phi\eta_{vv}^2 + \mu_v^3)v_x^2 - \mu_u^3 u_x v_x - \mu^1 = 0, \end{aligned} \quad (4.14)$$

$$\begin{aligned} (\eta_v^1 - \xi_t^1)g + (B\xi_{xx}^2 - \xi_t^2)v_x + \psi\xi_{xx}^2 u_x - B\eta_{vv}^2 v_x^2 \\ - (\psi\eta_{uu}^1 + \mu_u^4)u_x^2 - \mu_v^4 u_x v_x - \mu^2 = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (4.15)$$

Since Eqs. (4.14), (4.15) hold identically in u_v, v_x they provide the equations

$$\begin{aligned} A\xi_{xx}^2 - \xi_t^2 = 0, \quad \phi\xi_{xx}^2 = 0, \quad A\eta_{uu}^1 = 0, \\ \phi\eta_{vv}^2 + \mu_v^3 = 0, \quad \mu_u^3 = 0, \quad (\eta_u^1 - \xi_t^1)f - \mu^1 = 0 \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} B\xi_{xx}^2 - \xi_t^2 = 0, \quad \psi\xi_{xx}^2 = 0, \quad B\eta_{vv}^2 = 0, \\ \psi\eta_{uu}^1 + \mu_u^4 = 0, \quad \mu_v^4 = 0, \quad (\eta_v^1 - \xi_t^1)g - \mu^2 = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Furthermore, since A, B, ϕ and ψ are arbitrary elements, these equations yield

$$\xi_{xx}^2 = \xi_t^2 = 0, \quad \eta_{uu}^1 = \eta_{vv}^2 = 0, \quad (4.16)$$

$$\mu^1 = (\eta_u^1 - \xi_t^1)f, \quad \mu^2 = (\eta_v^1 - \xi_t^1)g, \quad (4.17)$$

and

$$\mu_u^3 = \mu_v^3 = 0, \quad \mu_u^4 = \mu_v^4 = 0.$$

Differentiating the first equation in (4.17) with respect to t and invoking that $\mu_t^1 = \eta_t^1 = 0$ we obtain

$$\xi_{tt}^1 = 0. \quad (4.18)$$

Summarizing the equations (3.22), (4.9), (4.11), (4.16) and (4.18) we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} \xi_x^1 = \xi_u^1 = \xi_v^1 = 0, \quad \xi_{tt}^1 = 0, \\ \xi_t^2 = \xi_u^2 = \xi_v^2 = 0, \quad \xi_{xx}^2 = 0, \\ \eta_t^1 = \eta_x^1 = \eta_v^1 = 0, \quad \eta_{uu}^1 = 0, \\ \eta_t^2 = \eta_x^2 = \eta_u^2 = 0, \quad \eta_{vv}^2 = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (4.19)$$

The integration of Eqs. (4.19) yields (see also Eqs. (3.24)):

$$\begin{aligned}\xi^1 &= C_1 + C_5 t, & \xi^2 &= C_2 + C_6 x, \\ \eta^1 &= C_3 + C_7 u, & \eta^2 &= C_4 + C_8 v,\end{aligned}\tag{4.20}$$

where $C_1, \dots, C_{10} = \text{const}$. Substituting (4.20) in (4.17) and (4.13) we obtain:

$$\mu^1 = (C_7 - C_5)f, \quad \mu^2 = (C_8 - C_5)g,\tag{4.21}$$

$$\mu^3 = (2C_6 - C_5 + C_7 - C_8)\phi, \quad \mu^4 = (2C_6 - C_5 + C_8 - C_7)\psi,\tag{4.22}$$

$$\mu^5 = (2C_6 - C_5)A, \quad \mu^6 = (2C_6 - C_5)B.\tag{4.23}$$

The functions ξ, η and μ given by (4.20) and (4.21)-(4.23), respectively, provide the general solution to the determining equations (2.30)-(2.33), and hence define the most general equivalence generator (2.5) for the system (1.1).

5 Equivalence Lie algebra

5.1 Basis of the equivalence algebra

The operator (2.5) with the coordinates (4.20)-(4.23) is the linear combination of the following *basic equivalence generators*:

$$\begin{aligned}Y_1 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}, & Y_2 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, & Y_3 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial u}, & Y_4 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial v}, \\ Y_5 &= t \frac{\partial}{\partial t} - f \frac{\partial}{\partial f} - g \frac{\partial}{\partial g} - \phi \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} - \psi \frac{\partial}{\partial \psi} - A \frac{\partial}{\partial A} - B \frac{\partial}{\partial B}, \\ Y_6 &= x \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + 2\phi \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} + 2\psi \frac{\partial}{\partial \psi} + 2A \frac{\partial}{\partial A} + 2B \frac{\partial}{\partial B}, \\ Y_7 &= u \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + f \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + \phi \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} - \psi \frac{\partial}{\partial \psi}, \\ Y_8 &= v \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + g \frac{\partial}{\partial g} - \phi \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} + \psi \frac{\partial}{\partial \psi}.\end{aligned}\tag{5.1}$$

Thus, the generator of the equivalence group has the form

$$Y = \sum_{\nu=1}^8 C_\nu Y_\nu.\tag{5.2}$$

5.2 Projections

We will use the following projections of the equivalence operator (5.2):

$$\begin{aligned}\text{pr}_{(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{u})}(Y) &= X \equiv \xi^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} + \eta^i \frac{\partial}{\partial u^i}, \\ \text{pr}_{(\mathbf{u},F)}(Y) &= Z \equiv \eta^i \frac{\partial}{\partial u^i} + \mu^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial f^\alpha}.\end{aligned}\tag{5.3}$$

Taking the projections (5.3) of the basis operators (5.1), writing operators up to constant factors and denoting $Z_\mu = \text{pr}_{(\mathbf{u},F)}(Y_{2+\mu})$, $\mu = 1, \dots, 8$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}X_1 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}, & X_2 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, & X_3 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial u}, & X_4 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial v}, \\ X_5 &= t \frac{\partial}{\partial t}, & X_6 &= x \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, & X_7 &= u \frac{\partial}{\partial u}, & X_8 &= v \frac{\partial}{\partial v}\end{aligned}\tag{5.4}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}Z_1 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial u}, & Z_2 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial v}, \\ Z_3 &= f \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + g \frac{\partial}{\partial g} + \phi \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} + \psi \frac{\partial}{\partial \psi} + A \frac{\partial}{\partial A} + B \frac{\partial}{\partial B}, \\ Z_4 &= \phi \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} + \psi \frac{\partial}{\partial \psi} + A \frac{\partial}{\partial A} + B \frac{\partial}{\partial B}, \\ Z_5 &= u \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + f \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + \phi \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} - \psi \frac{\partial}{\partial \psi}, \\ Z_6 &= v \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + g \frac{\partial}{\partial g} - \phi \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} + \psi \frac{\partial}{\partial \psi},\end{aligned}\tag{5.5}$$

Remark 5.1. See Remark (10.1) for the commutator table of the operators (5.5).

5.3 Principal Lie algebra

One can see from (5.5) that $\text{pr}_{(\mathbf{u},F)}(Y) = 0$ only if $Y = C_1 Y_1 + C_2 Y_2$. Hence (see [5], Paper 3, Corollary 3.1), the *principal Lie algebra* for the system (1.1), i.e. the algebra admitted by Eqs. (1.1) with arbitrary f, g, ϕ, ψ , is the two-dimensional Lie algebra spanned by X_1, X_2 from (5.4).

PART 2

Excitable systems with linear cross-diffusion

6 Introduction

The systems (1.1) with linear cross-diffusion are obtained by assuming that ϕ and ψ are arbitrary constants. Thus, we will consider now the system

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} &= f(u, v) + A_1 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + B_1 \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2}, \\ \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} &= g(u, v) + A_2 \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + B_2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}\end{aligned}\tag{6.1}$$

containing two arbitrary functions f, g and four arbitrary constants A_1, A_2, B_1, B_2 .

We will again use the notation (2.1)-(2.2), namely

$$\mathbf{x} = (x^1, x^2), \quad \mathbf{u} = (u^1, u^2), \quad \mathbf{y} = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}),\tag{6.2}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}x^1 &= t, & x^2 &= x, & u^1 &= u, & u^2 &= v, \\ y^1 &= t, & y^2 &= x, & y^3 &= u, & y^4 &= v.\end{aligned}\tag{6.3}$$

The notation (2.3)-(2.4) for the arbitrary elements will be modified as follows:

$$F = (f^1, f^2, f^3, f^4, f^5, f^6),\tag{6.4}$$

where

$$f^1 = f, \quad f^2 = g, \quad f^3 = A_1, \quad f^4 = B_1, \quad f^5 = A_2, \quad f^6 = B_2.\tag{6.5}$$

7 Determining equations for equivalence group

7.1 Equivalence group

We identify equivalence transformations of the system (6.1) with non-degenerate changes of the variables t, x, u, v and transformations of the arbitrary elements f, g, A_i, B_i ($i = 1, 2$) mapping the system (6.1) into a system of the same form. Thus, continuous groups of equivalence transformations (depending on a group parameter a) have the form

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{t} &= \bar{t}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}, a), & \bar{x} &= \bar{x}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}, a), \\ \bar{u} &= \bar{u}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}, a), & \bar{v} &= \bar{v}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}, a), \\ \bar{f}^1 &= \bar{f}^1(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}, F, a), \dots, & \bar{f}^6 &= \bar{f}^6(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}, F, a).\end{aligned}\tag{7.1}$$

They map the system (6.1) into the following system:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial \bar{u}}{\partial t} &= \bar{f}(\bar{u}, \bar{v}) + \bar{A}_1 \frac{\partial^2 \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{x}^2} + \bar{B}_1 \frac{\partial^2 \bar{v}}{\partial \bar{x}^2}, \\ \frac{\partial \bar{v}}{\partial t} &= \bar{g}(\bar{u}, \bar{v}) + \bar{A}_2 \frac{\partial^2 \bar{v}}{\partial \bar{x}^2} + \bar{B}_2 \frac{\partial^2 \bar{u}}{\partial \bar{x}^2},\end{aligned}\tag{6.1'}$$

where the functions $\bar{f}(\bar{u}, \bar{v})$, $\bar{g}(\bar{u}, \bar{v})$ and the constants $\bar{A}_1, \bar{A}_2, \bar{B}_1, \bar{B}_2$ may differ from the corresponding functions and constants in the original system (6.1).

The generator of the group of equivalence transformations (7.1) has the form

$$Y = \xi^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \xi^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \eta^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + \eta^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + \mu^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial f^\alpha},\tag{7.2}$$

or

$$Y = \xi^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} + \eta^i \frac{\partial}{\partial u^i} + \mu^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial f^\alpha},\tag{7.2'}$$

where the summation is taken over $i = 1, 2$ and $\alpha = 1, \dots, 6$. The coefficients are

$$\xi^i = \xi^i(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}), \quad \eta^i = \eta^i(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}), \quad i = 1, 2,$$

and

$$\mu^\alpha = \mu^\alpha(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}, F), \quad \alpha = 1, \dots, 6.$$

In order to calculate the equivalence generators, we write Eqs. (6.1) in the form

$$u_t - A_1 u_{xx} - B_1 v_{xx} - f = 0,\tag{7.3}$$

$$v_t - A_2 v_{xx} - B_2 u_{xx} - g = 0,\tag{7.4}$$

$$f_t = f_x = 0, \quad g_t = g_x = 0,\tag{7.5}$$

$$(A_1)_t = (A_1)_x = (A_1)_u = (A_1)_v = 0,\tag{7.6}$$

$$(B_1)_t = (B_1)_x = (B_1)_u = (B_1)_v = 0,\tag{7.7}$$

$$(A_2)_t = (A_2)_x = (A_2)_u = (A_2)_v = 0,\tag{7.8}$$

$$(B_2)_t = (B_2)_x = (B_2)_u = (B_2)_v = 0,\tag{7.9}$$

where Eqs. (7.5)-(7.9) guarantee that the functions f, g do not depend upon the variables t, x and that A_1, B_1, A_2, B_2 do not depend on all physical variables t, x, u, v .

Remark 7.1. Using the notation (6.3), (6.5), Eqs. (7.5)-(7.9) can be written

$$f_\sigma^\alpha = 0, \quad (\alpha = 1, 2; \quad \sigma = 1, 2),\tag{7.10}$$

$$f_\sigma^\alpha = 0, \quad (\alpha = 3, 4, 5, 6; \quad \sigma = 1, 2, 3, 4).\tag{7.11}$$

7.2 Determining equations

A convenient approach to calculation of equivalence transformation groups has been suggested in [3]. According to this approach (see also [4] or [5], Paper 5, and [6], [7]), a one-parameter group of transformations (7.1) is a group of equivalence transformations for Eqs. (6.1) if it leaves invariant the “extended system” (7.4)-(7.9). Then the usual infinitesimal invariance test yields that the *prolonged generator* \tilde{Y} of the group (7.1) should satisfy the following equations on the system (7.4)-(7.9):

$$\tilde{Y}(u_t - A_1 u_{xx} - B_1 v_{xx} - f) = 0, \quad (7.12)$$

$$\tilde{Y}(v_t - A_2 v_{xx} - B_2 u_{xx} - g) = 0, \quad (7.13)$$

$$\tilde{Y}(f_t) = \tilde{Y}(f_x) = 0, \quad \tilde{Y}(g_t) = \tilde{Y}(g_x) = 0, \quad (7.14)$$

$$\tilde{Y}((A_1)_t) = \tilde{Y}((A_1)_x) = \tilde{Y}((A_1)_u) = \tilde{Y}((A_1)_v) = 0, \quad (7.15)$$

$$\tilde{Y}((B_1)_t) = \tilde{Y}((B_1)_x) = \tilde{Y}((B_1)_u) = \tilde{Y}((B_1)_v) = 0, \quad (7.16)$$

$$\tilde{Y}((A_2)_t) = \tilde{Y}((A_2)_x) = \tilde{Y}((A_2)_u) = \tilde{Y}((A_2)_v) = 0, \quad (7.17)$$

$$\tilde{Y}((B_2)_t) = \tilde{Y}((B_2)_x) = \tilde{Y}((B_2)_u) = \tilde{Y}((B_2)_v) = 0, \quad (7.18)$$

where (see the notation (6.5))

$$\tilde{Y} = Y + \zeta_1^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial u_t} + \zeta_1^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t} + \zeta_{22}^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{xx}} + \zeta_{22}^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial v_{xx}} + \omega_\sigma^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial f_\sigma^\alpha}. \quad (7.19)$$

Here Y is the operator (7.2) and the coordinates ζ_1^i, ζ_{22}^i ($i = 1, 2$) are given by the usual *prolongation formulae* (see the notation (6.3)):

$$\zeta_1^i = D_t(\eta^i) - u_t^i D_t(\xi^1) - u_x^i D_t(\xi^2), \quad (7.20)$$

$$\zeta_2^i = D_x(\eta^i) - u_t^i D_x(\xi^1) - u_x^i D_x(\xi^2), \quad (7.21)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta_{22}^i &= D_x(\zeta_2^i) - u_{tx}^i D_x(\xi^1) - u_{xx}^i D_x(\xi^2) \\ &= D_x^2(\eta^i) - u_t^i D_x^2(\xi^1) - u_x^i D_x^2(\xi^2) - 2u_{tx}^i D_x(\xi^1) - 2u_{xx}^i D_x(\xi^2), \end{aligned} \quad (7.22)$$

where

$$D_t = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + u_t \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + v_t \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + u_{tt} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_t} + u_{tx} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_x} + v_{tt} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t} + v_{tx} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_x} + \dots, \quad (7.23)$$

$$D_x = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + u_x \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + v_x \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + u_{tx} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_t} + u_{xx} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_x} + v_{tx} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_t} + v_{xx} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_x} + \dots$$

and D_x^2 is the repeated action of the operator D_x , e.g. $D_x^2(\eta^i) = D_x(D_x(\eta^i))$.

The coordinates ω_σ^α ($\alpha = 1, \dots, 6$; $\sigma = 1, \dots, 4$) of the operator (7.19) are given by (compare with the prolongation formulae (7.20)-(7.21))

$$\omega_\sigma^\alpha = \tilde{D}_\sigma(\mu^\alpha) - f_t^\alpha \tilde{D}_\sigma(\xi^1) - f_x^\alpha \tilde{D}_\sigma(\xi^2) - f_u^\alpha \tilde{D}_\sigma(\eta^1) - f_v^\alpha \tilde{D}_\sigma(\eta^2), \quad (7.24)$$

where (compare with (7.23) and see the notation (6.3) for y^σ)

$$\tilde{D}_\sigma = \frac{\partial}{\partial y^\sigma} + f_\sigma^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial f^\alpha}, \quad \sigma = 1, \dots, 4. \quad (7.25)$$

In (7.19) and (7.25) we use the notation

$$f_\sigma^\alpha = \frac{\partial f^\alpha}{\partial y^\sigma}, \quad \sigma = 1, \dots, 4,$$

so that, according to the notation (6.3) for y^σ , we have:

$$f_1^\alpha = f_t^\alpha, \quad f_2^\alpha = f_x^\alpha, \quad f_3^\alpha = f_u^\alpha, \quad f_4^\alpha = f_v^\alpha.$$

Using the expression (7.19) for the operator \tilde{Y} and invoking the notation (6.5) we write Eqs. (7.12)-(7.18) in the following form (see also Eqs. (7.10), (7.11)):

$$\zeta_1^1 - A_1 \zeta_{22}^1 - u_{xx} \mu^3 - B_1 \zeta_{22}^2 - v_{xx} \mu^4 - \mu^1 = 0, \quad (7.26)$$

$$\zeta_1^2 - A_2 \zeta_{22}^2 - v_{xx} \mu^5 - B_2 \zeta_{22}^1 - u_{xx} \mu^6 - \mu^2 = 0, \quad (7.27)$$

$$\omega_\sigma^\alpha = 0, \quad (\alpha = 1, 2; \quad \sigma = 1, 2), \quad (7.28)$$

$$\omega_\sigma^\alpha = 0, \quad (\alpha = 3, 4, 5, 6; \quad \sigma = 1, 2, 3, 4), \quad (7.29)$$

where ζ_1^i, ζ_{22}^i ($i = 1, 2$) and ω_σ^α are given by (7.20), (7.22) and (7.24), respectively.

Eqs. (7.26)-(7.29) determine the generators (7.2) of the maximal continuous group of equivalence transformations (7.1) for the system (6.1). Therefore Eqs. (7.26)-(7.29) are called the *determining equations for the equivalence generators*.

8 Preliminary analysis of determining equations

8.1 Integration of equations $\omega_\sigma^\alpha = 0$

Since Eqs. (7.12)-(7.18) should be satisfied upon evaluating their left-hand sides on the system (7.3)-(7.9), it suffices to write the operators (7.25) by taking into account the equations (7.5)-(7.9). Then, denoting

$$\tilde{D}_1 = \tilde{D}_t, \quad \tilde{D}_2 = \tilde{D}_x, \quad \tilde{D}_3 = \tilde{D}_u, \quad \tilde{D}_4 = \tilde{D}_v \quad (8.1)$$

and invoking the notation (6.3), (6.5) we will have:

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{D}_t &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}, & \tilde{D}_u &= \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + f_u \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + g_u \frac{\partial}{\partial g}, \\ \tilde{D}_x &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, & \tilde{D}_v &= \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + f_v \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + g_v \frac{\partial}{\partial g}.\end{aligned}\tag{8.2}$$

Furthermore, it follows from Eqs. (6.5), (7.5)-(7.9) and (7.24) that

$$\omega_\sigma^\alpha = \tilde{D}_\sigma(\mu^\alpha) - f_u^\alpha \tilde{D}_\sigma(\eta^1) - f_v^\alpha \tilde{D}_\sigma(\eta^2), \quad (\alpha = 1, 2),\tag{8.3}$$

$$\omega_\sigma^\alpha = \tilde{D}_\sigma(\mu^\alpha), \quad (\alpha = 3, 4, 5, 6).\tag{8.4}$$

For example, taking $\alpha = \sigma = 1$ in (8.3) and using Eqs. (6.5), (8.1), (8.2) we have:

$$\omega_1^1 = \tilde{D}_t(\mu^1) - f_u \tilde{D}_t(\eta^1) - f_v \tilde{D}_t(\eta^2) = \mu_t^1 - f_u \eta_t^1 - f_v \eta_t^2.$$

Thus, taking $\sigma = 1$ and $\sigma = 2$ in (8.3) we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}\omega_1^1 &= \mu_t^1 - f_u \eta_t^1 - f_v \eta_t^2, & \omega_1^2 &= \mu_t^2 - g_u \eta_t^1 - g_v \eta_t^2, \\ \omega_2^1 &= \mu_x^1 - f_u \eta_x^1 - f_v \eta_x^2, & \omega_2^2 &= \mu_x^2 - g_u \eta_x^1 - g_v \eta_x^2.\end{aligned}$$

Hence, Eqs. (7.28) are written as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\mu_t^1 - f_u \eta_t^1 - f_v \eta_t^2 &= 0, \\ \mu_t^2 - g_u \eta_t^1 - g_v \eta_t^2 &= 0, \\ \mu_x^1 - f_u \eta_x^1 - f_v \eta_x^2 &= 0, \\ \mu_x^2 - g_u \eta_x^1 - g_v \eta_x^2 &= 0.\end{aligned}\tag{8.5}$$

Since η^i, μ^i do not depend upon f_u, f_v, g_u, g_v , Eqs. (8.5) yield

$$\begin{aligned}\eta_t^1 = \eta_x^1 &= 0, & \eta_t^2 = \eta_x^2 &= 0, \\ \mu_t^1 = \mu_x^1 &= 0, & \mu_t^2 = \mu_x^2 &= 0.\end{aligned}\tag{8.6}$$

Likewise, using (8.4) and invoking Eqs. (6.5), (8.1), one obtains

$$\begin{aligned}\omega_1^\alpha &= \tilde{D}_t(\mu^\alpha) = \mu_t^\alpha, \\ \omega_2^\alpha &= \tilde{D}_x(\mu^\alpha) = \mu_x^\alpha, \\ \omega_3^\alpha &= \tilde{D}_u(\mu^\alpha) = \mu_u^\alpha + f_u \mu_f^\alpha + g_u \mu_g^\alpha, \\ \omega_4^\alpha &= \tilde{D}_v(\mu^\alpha) = \mu_v^\alpha + f_v \mu_f^\alpha + g_v \mu_g^\alpha\end{aligned}\tag{8.7}$$

for $\alpha = 3, \dots, 6$. Therefore Eqs. (7.29) yield:

$$\mu_t^\alpha = \mu_x^\alpha = \mu_u^\alpha = \mu_v^\alpha = \mu_f^\alpha = \mu_g^\alpha = 0, \quad (\alpha = 3, 4, 5, 6). \quad (8.8)$$

Thus, we have completed the integration of Eqs. (7.28), (7.29). The result is given by Eqs. (8.6) and (8.8). It remains to solve Eqs. (7.26), (7.27).

8.2 Simplifications derived from equations (7.26), (7.27)

We turn now to Eqs. (7.26), (7.27),

$$\zeta_1^1 - A_1 \zeta_{22}^1 - u_{xx} \mu^3 - B_1 \zeta_{22}^2 - v_{xx} \mu^4 - \mu^1 = 0, \quad (7.26)$$

$$\zeta_1^2 - A_2 \zeta_{22}^2 - v_{xx} \mu^5 - B_2 \zeta_{22}^1 - u_{xx} \mu^6 - \mu^2 = 0. \quad (7.27)$$

Let us single out in Eqs. (7.26), (7.27) the terms containing u_{tx} and v_{tx} . It is manifest from (7.20)-(7.22) that they are involved only in ζ_{22}^1 and ζ_{22}^2 given by (7.22). Collecting these terms and nullifying them we obtain the equations

$$A_1 D_x(\xi^1) = 0, \quad B_1 D_x(\xi^1) = 0, \quad A_2 D_x(\xi^1) = 0, \quad B_2 D_x(\xi^1) = 0.$$

Since A_i, B_i are arbitrary parameters, these equations yield

$$D_x(\xi^1) = 0. \quad (8.9)$$

Writing Eq. (8.9) in the expanded form (see the definition of D_x in (7.23))

$$\xi_x^1 + u_x \xi_u^1 + v_x \xi_v^1 = 0,$$

we obtain

$$\xi_x^1 = \xi_u^1 = \xi_v^1 = 0. \quad (8.10)$$

Now we will single out in Eqs. (7.26), (7.27) the terms involving

$$u_x u_{xx}, \quad v_x u_{xx}, \quad u_x v_{xx}, \quad v_x v_{xx}. \quad (8.11)$$

They are contained in $\zeta_{22}^1, \zeta_{22}^2$ and will also appear in ζ_1^1, ζ_1^2 after eliminating u_t, v_t by using Eqs. (7.3), (7.4). Namely, keeping in (7.22) the terms that may contain the quantities of our interest and invoking Eq. (8.9), we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta_{22}^1 &= -u_x D_x^2(\xi^2) - 2u_{xx} D_x(\xi^2) + \dots \\ &= -u_x (u_{xx} \xi_u^2 + v_{xx} \xi_v^2) - 2u_{xx} (u_x \xi_u^2 + v_x \xi_v^2) + \dots, \end{aligned} \quad (8.12)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta_{22}^2 &= -v_x D_x^2(\xi^2) - 2v_{xx} D_x(\xi^2) + \dots \\ &= -v_x (u_{xx} \xi_u^2 + v_{xx} \xi_v^2) - 2v_{xx} (u_x \xi_u^2 + v_x \xi_v^2) + \dots. \end{aligned} \quad (8.13)$$

Furthermore, we have:

$$\begin{aligned}\zeta_1^1 &= -u_x D_t(\xi^2) + \dots = -u_x (u_t \xi_u^2 + v_t \xi_v^2) + \dots \\ &= -u_x \xi_u^2 (A_1 u_{xx} + B_1 v_{xx}) - u_x \xi_v^2 (A_2 v_{xx} + B_2 u_{xx}) + \dots,\end{aligned}\quad (8.14)$$

and likewise

$$\zeta_1^2 = -v_x \xi_u^2 (A_1 u_{xx} + B_1 v_{xx}) - v_x \xi_v^2 (A_2 v_{xx} + B_2 u_{xx}) + \dots. \quad (8.15)$$

Substituting (8.12)-(8.15) in the left-hand sides of Eqs. (7.26), (7.27) we obtain the following terms containing the quantities (8.11):

$$\begin{aligned}\zeta_1^1 - A_1 \zeta_{22}^1 - B_1 \zeta_{22}^2 &= 3B_1 \xi_v^2 v_x v_{xx} + (2A_1 \xi_u^2 - B_2 \xi_v^2) u_x u_{xx} \\ &+ (B_1 \xi_u^2 + 2A_1 \xi_v^2) v_x u_{xx} + [B_1 \xi_u^2 + (A_1 - A_2) \xi_v^2] u_x v_{xx} + \dots,\end{aligned}\quad (8.16)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\zeta_1^2 - A_2 \zeta_{22}^2 - B_2 \zeta_{22}^1 &= 3B_2 \xi_u^2 u_x u_{xx} + (2A_2 \xi_v^2 - B_1 \xi_u^2) v_x v_{xx} \\ &+ (B_2 \xi_v^2 + 2A_2 \xi_u^2) u_x v_{xx} + [B_2 \xi_v^2 + (A_2 - A_1) \xi_u^2] v_x u_{xx} + \dots.\end{aligned}\quad (8.17)$$

Eqs. (7.26), (7.27) are satisfied identically upon eliminating u_t and v_t . Therefore we nullify the coefficients of quantities (8.11) in (8.16), (8.17) and obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}B_1 \xi_v^2 &= 0, & B_1 \xi_u^2 + (A_1 - A_2) \xi_v^2 &= 0, \\ 2A_1 \xi_u^2 - B_2 \xi_v^2 &= 0, & B_1 \xi_u^2 + 2A_1 \xi_v^2 &= 0;\end{aligned}\quad (8.18)$$

$$\begin{aligned}B_2 \xi_u^2 &= 0, & B_2 \xi_v^2 + (A_2 - A_1) \xi_u^2 &= 0, \\ 2A_2 \xi_v^2 - B_1 \xi_u^2 &= 0, & B_2 \xi_v^2 + 2A_2 \xi_u^2 &= 0.\end{aligned}\quad (8.19)$$

Since A_i, B_i are arbitrary parameters, Eqs. (8.18), (8.19) yield that

$$\xi_u^2 = \xi_v^2 = 0. \quad (8.20)$$

8.3 Results of preliminary analysis

Collecting Eqs. (8.6), (8.8), (8.10) and (8.20), obtained above by a preliminary analysis of the determining equations (7.26)-(7.29), we obtain the equations

$$\begin{aligned}\xi_x^1 &= \xi_u^1 = \xi_v^1 = 0, & \xi_u^2 &= \xi_v^2 = 0, \\ \eta_t^1 &= \eta_x^1 = 0, & \eta_t^2 &= \eta_x^2 = 0;\end{aligned}\quad (8.21)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\mu_t^1 &= \mu_x^1 = 0, & \mu_t^2 &= \mu_x^2 = 0, \\ \mu_t^\alpha &= \mu_x^\alpha = \mu_u^\alpha = \mu_v^\alpha = \mu_f^\alpha = \mu_g^\alpha = 0, & (\alpha &= 3, 4, 5, 6).\end{aligned}\quad (8.22)$$

The equations (8.21) and (8.22) yield that

$$\begin{aligned}\xi^1 &= \xi^1(t), & \xi^2 &= \xi^2(t, x), \\ \eta^1 &= \eta^1(u, v), & \eta^2 &= \eta^2(u, v)\end{aligned}\tag{8.23}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\mu^\alpha &= \mu^\alpha(u, v, f, g, A_1, A_2, B_1, B_2), & (\alpha = 1, 2), \\ \mu^\alpha &= \mu^\alpha(A_1, A_2, B_1, B_2), & (\alpha = 3, 4, 5, 6),\end{aligned}\tag{8.24}$$

respectively.

9 Solution of determining equations

9.1 Determining equations after simplification

Substituting (8.23) in the prolongation formula (7.20), we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}\zeta_1^1 &= D_t(\eta^1) - u_t D_t(\xi^1) - u_x D_t(\xi^2) = (\eta_u^1 - \xi_t^1)u_t + \eta_v^1 v_t - \xi_t^2 u_x, \\ \zeta_1^2 &= D_t(\eta^2) - v_t D_t(\xi^1) - v_x D_t(\xi^2) = \eta_u^2 u_t + (\eta_v^2 - \xi_t^1)v_t - \xi_t^2 v_x.\end{aligned}\tag{9.1}$$

The formula (7.22) is simplified likewise. Namely, since $D_x(\xi^1) = 0$, it is written

$$\zeta_{22}^i = D_x^2(\eta^i) - u_x^i D_x^2(\xi^2) - 2u_{xx}^i D_x(\xi^2).\tag{9.2}$$

Furthermore, invoking (8.23), we have:

$$\begin{aligned}D_x(\xi^2) &= \xi_x^2, & D_x^2(\xi^2) &= \xi_{xx}^2, \\ D_x(\eta^i) &= \eta_u^i u_x + \eta_v^i v_x, \\ D_x^2(\eta^i) &= \eta_{uu}^i u_{xx} + \eta_{vv}^i v_{xx} + \eta_{uv}^i u_x v_x + 2\eta_{uv}^i u_x v_x + \eta_{vv}^i v_x^2.\end{aligned}$$

Therefore (9.2) yields:

$$\begin{aligned}\zeta_{22}^1 &= (\eta_{uu}^1 - 2\xi_x^2)u_{xx} + \eta_{vv}^1 v_{xx} + \eta_{uv}^1 u_x^2 + 2\eta_{uv}^1 u_x v_x + \eta_{vv}^1 v_x^2 - \xi_{xx}^2 u_x, \\ \zeta_{22}^2 &= \eta_{uu}^2 u_{xx} + (\eta_{vv}^2 - 2\xi_x^2)v_{xx} + \eta_{uv}^2 u_x^2 + 2\eta_{uv}^2 u_x v_x + \eta_{vv}^2 v_x^2 - \xi_{xx}^2 v_x.\end{aligned}\tag{9.3}$$

Substituting (9.3) in the determining equations (7.26), (7.27), eliminating u_t, v_t by

using Eqs. (7.3), (7.4) and collecting the like terms we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}
& [(2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1 + \eta_u^1 - \eta_v^2)B_1 + (A_2 - A_1)\eta_v^1 - \mu^4]v_{xx} \\
& + [(2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1)A_1 + B_2\eta_v^1 - B_1\eta_u^2 - \mu^3]u_{xx} \\
& - [A_1\eta_{uu}^1 + B_1\eta_{uu}^2]u_x^2 - [A_1\eta_{vv}^1 + B_1\eta_{vv}^2]v_x^2 \\
& - 2[A_1\eta_{uv}^1 + B_1\eta_{uv}^2]u_xv_x \\
& + [A_1\xi_{xx}^2 - \xi_t^2]u_x + B_1\xi_{xx}^2v_x \\
& + (\eta_u^1 - \xi_t^1)f + g\eta_v^1 - \mu^1 = 0
\end{aligned} \tag{9.4}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
& [(2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1 + \eta_v^2 - \eta_u^1)B_2 + (A_1 - A_2)\eta_u^2 - \mu^6]u_{xx} \\
& + [(2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1)A_2 + B_1\eta_u^2 - B_2\eta_v^1 - \mu^5]v_{xx} \\
& - [A_2\eta_{uu}^2 + B_2\eta_{uu}^1]u_x^2 - [A_2\eta_{vv}^2 + B_2\eta_{vv}^1]v_x^2 \\
& - 2[A_2\eta_{uv}^2 + B_2\eta_{uv}^1]u_xv_x \\
& + [A_2\xi_{xx}^2 - \xi_t^2]v_x + B_2\xi_{xx}^2u_x \\
& + (\eta_v^2 - \xi_t^1)g + f\eta_u^2 - \mu^2 = 0.
\end{aligned} \tag{9.5}$$

Noting that the equations (9.4)-(9.5) should be satisfied identically in the variables u_{xx}, \dots, v_x and that the unknown functions ξ, η and μ do not depend upon these variables, we split Eqs. (9.4) and (9.5) into the equations

$$(2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1 + \eta_u^1 - \eta_v^2)B_1 + (A_2 - A_1)\eta_v^1 - \mu^4 = 0, \tag{9.6}$$

$$(2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1)A_1 + B_2\eta_v^1 - B_1\eta_u^2 - \mu^3 = 0, \tag{9.7}$$

$$A_1\eta_{uu}^1 + B_1\eta_{uu}^2 = 0, \quad A_1\eta_{vv}^1 + B_1\eta_{vv}^2 = 0, \quad A_1\eta_{uv}^1 + B_1\eta_{uv}^2 = 0, \tag{9.8}$$

$$A_1\xi_{xx}^2 - \xi_t^2 = 0, \quad B_1\xi_{xx}^2 = 0, \tag{9.9}$$

$$(\eta_u^1 - \xi_t^1)f + g\eta_v^1 - \mu^1 = 0 \tag{9.10}$$

and

$$(2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1 + \eta_v^2 - \eta_u^1)B_2 + (A_1 - A_2)\eta_u^2 - \mu^6 = 0, \tag{9.11}$$

$$(2\xi_x^2 - \xi_t^1)A_2 + B_1\eta_u^2 - B_2\eta_v^1 - \mu^5 = 0, \tag{9.12}$$

$$A_2\eta_{uu}^2 + B_2\eta_{uu}^1 = 0, \quad A_2\eta_{vv}^2 + B_2\eta_{vv}^1 = 0, \quad A_2\eta_{uv}^2 + B_2\eta_{uv}^1 = 0, \tag{9.13}$$

$$A_2\xi_{xx}^2 - \xi_t^2 = 0, \quad B_2\xi_{xx}^2 = 0, \tag{9.14}$$

$$(\eta_v^2 - \xi_t^1)g + f\eta_u^2 - \mu^2 = 0, \tag{9.15}$$

respectively.

9.2 Integration of determining equations

Since ξ and η do not depend on the parameters A_i , B_i , Eqs. (9.8), (9.9) yield

$$\eta_{uu}^i = \eta_{uv}^i = \eta_{vv}^i = 0, \quad (i = 1, 2), \quad (9.16)$$

$$\xi_t^2 = 0, \quad \xi_{xx}^2 = 0. \quad (9.17)$$

Differentiating (9.10) with respect to t and invoking Eqs. (8.6) we obtain

$$\xi_{tt}^1 = 0. \quad (9.18)$$

Eqs. (9.13), (9.14) are satisfied due to (9.16), (9.17). Integrating Eqs. (9.16), (9.17) and (9.18) one obtains:

$$\begin{aligned} \xi^1 &= C_5 t + C_1, & \xi^2 &= C_6 x + C_2, \\ \eta^1 &= C_7 u + C_9 v + C_3, & \eta^2 &= C_{10} u + C_8 v + C_4, \end{aligned} \quad (9.19)$$

where $C_1, \dots, C_{10} = \text{const.}$

Substituting (9.19) in (9.10), (9.15), (9.7), (9.6), (9.12) and (9.11) we obtain:

$$\mu^1 = (C_7 - C_5)f + C_9 g, \quad \mu^2 = C_{10} f + (C_8 - C_5)g, \quad (9.20)$$

$$\mu^3 = (2C_6 - C_5)A_1 - C_{10} B_1 + C_9 B_2, \quad (9.21)$$

$$\mu^4 = C_9 (A_2 - A_1) + (2C_6 - C_5 + C_7 - C_8)B_1, \quad (9.22)$$

$$\mu^5 = (2C_6 - C_5)A_2 + C_{10} B_1 - C_9 B_2, \quad (9.23)$$

$$\mu^6 = C_{10} (A_1 - A_2) + (2C_6 - C_5 + C_8 - C_7)B_2. \quad (9.24)$$

The functions ξ , η and μ given by (9.19) and (9.20)-(9.24), respectively, provide the general solution to the determining equations (7.26)-(7.29), and hence define the most general equivalence generator (7.2) for the system (6.1).

10 Equivalence Lie algebra

10.1 Basis of the equivalence algebra

The operator (7.2) with the coordinates (9.19)-(9.24) is the linear combination of the following *basic equivalence generators*:

$$\begin{aligned}
Y_1 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}, & Y_2 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, & Y_3 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial u}, & Y_4 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial v}, \\
Y_5 &= t \frac{\partial}{\partial t} - f \frac{\partial}{\partial f} - g \frac{\partial}{\partial g} - A_i \frac{\partial}{\partial A_i} - B_i \frac{\partial}{\partial B_i}, \\
Y_6 &= x \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + 2A_i \frac{\partial}{\partial A_i} + 2B_i \frac{\partial}{\partial B_i}, \\
Y_7 &= u \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + f \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + B_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial B_1} - B_2 \frac{\partial}{\partial B_2}, \\
Y_8 &= v \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + g \frac{\partial}{\partial g} - B_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial B_1} + B_2 \frac{\partial}{\partial B_2}, \\
Y_9 &= v \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + g \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + B_2 \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial A_1} - \frac{\partial}{\partial A_2} \right) + (A_2 - A_1) \frac{\partial}{\partial B_1}, \\
Y_{10} &= u \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + f \frac{\partial}{\partial g} + B_1 \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial A_2} - \frac{\partial}{\partial A_1} \right) + (A_1 - A_2) \frac{\partial}{\partial B_2}.
\end{aligned} \tag{10.1}$$

Thus, the generator of the equivalence group has the form

$$Y = \sum_{\nu=1}^{10} C_\nu Y_\nu. \tag{10.2}$$

Remark 10.1. The operators Y_9 and Y_{10} , unlike the generators Y_1, \dots, Y_8 of usual translations and dilations, generate interesting equivalence transformations. For example, integrating the Lie equations for Y_9 , one obtains the following one-parameter group with the group parameter a :

$$\begin{aligned}
\bar{t} &= t, & \bar{x} &= x, & \bar{u} &= u + av, & \bar{v} &= v, \\
\bar{f} &= f + ag, & \bar{g} &= g, \\
\bar{A}_1 &= A_1 + aB_2, & \bar{A}_2 &= A_2 - aB_2, \\
\bar{B}_1 &= B_1 + a(A_2 - A_1) - a^2, & \bar{B}_2 &= B_2.
\end{aligned} \tag{10.3}$$

10.2 Projections

We will use the following projections of the equivalence operator (10.2):

$$\begin{aligned} \text{pr}_{(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u})}(Y) = X &\equiv \xi^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} + \eta^i \frac{\partial}{\partial u^i}, \\ \text{pr}_{(\mathbf{u}, F)}(Y) = Z &\equiv \eta^i \frac{\partial}{\partial u^i} + \mu^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial f^\alpha}. \end{aligned} \quad (10.4)$$

Taking the projections (10.4) of the basis operators (10.1), writing operators up to constant factors and denoting $Z_\mu = \text{pr}_{(\mathbf{u}, F)}(Y_{2+\mu})$, $\mu = 1, \dots, 8$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} X_1 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t}, & X_2 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, & X_3 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial u}, & X_4 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial v}, & X_5 &= t \frac{\partial}{\partial t}, \\ X_6 &= x \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, & X_7 &= u \frac{\partial}{\partial u}, & X_8 &= v \frac{\partial}{\partial v}, & X_9 &= v \frac{\partial}{\partial u}, & X_{10} &= u \frac{\partial}{\partial v} \end{aligned} \quad (10.5)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} Z_1 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial u}, & Z_2 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial v}, & Z_3 &= f \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + g \frac{\partial}{\partial g} + A_i \frac{\partial}{\partial A_i} + B_i \frac{\partial}{\partial B_i}, \\ Z_4 &= A_i \frac{\partial}{\partial A_i} + B_i \frac{\partial}{\partial B_i}, & Z_5 &= u \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + f \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + B_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial B_1} - B_2 \frac{\partial}{\partial B_2}, \\ Z_6 &= v \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + g \frac{\partial}{\partial g} - B_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial B_1} + B_2 \frac{\partial}{\partial B_2}, \\ Z_7 &= v \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + g \frac{\partial}{\partial f} + B_2 \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial A_1} - \frac{\partial}{\partial A_2} \right) + (A_2 - A_1) \frac{\partial}{\partial B_1}, \\ Z_8 &= u \frac{\partial}{\partial v} + f \frac{\partial}{\partial g} + B_1 \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial A_2} - \frac{\partial}{\partial A_1} \right) + (A_1 - A_2) \frac{\partial}{\partial B_2}. \end{aligned} \quad (10.6)$$

10.3 Principal Lie algebra

One can see from (10.6) that $\text{pr}_{(\mathbf{u}, F)}(Y) = 0$ only if $Y = C_1 Y_1 + C_2 Y_2$. Hence (see [5], Paper 3, Corollary 3.1), the *principal Lie algebra* for the system (6.1) is the two-dimensional Lie algebra spanned by X_1, X_2 from (10.5).

10.4 Commutator table for operators (10.6)

Computing the commutators of the operators (10.6) one obtains the following commutator table:

	Z_1	Z_2	Z_3	Z_4	Z_5	Z_6	Z_7	Z_8
Z_1	0	0	0	0	Z_1	0	0	Z_2
Z_2	0	0	0	0	0	Z_2	Z_1	0
Z_3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Z_4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Z_5	$-Z_1$	0	0	0	0	0	Z_7	Z_8
Z_6	0	$-Z_2$	0	0	0	0	Z_7	$-Z_8$
Z_7	0	$-Z_1$	0	0	$-Z_7$	$-Z_7$	0	$Z_6 - Z_5$
Z_8	0	$-Z_2$	0	0	0	$-Z_8$	$Z_5 - Z_6$	0

(10.7)

Remark 10.1. The commutator table for the operators (5.5) is obtained by removing from Table (10.7) the columns and rows corresponding to the operators Z_7, Z_8 .

Bibliography

- [1] M. A. Tsyganov, V. N. Biktashev, J. Brindley, A. V. Holden, and G. Ivanitsky, “Waves in systems with cross-diffusion as a new class of nonlinear waves,” *Uspekhi Fizicheskikh Nauk*, vol. 177(3), pp. 275–300, 2007. English transl., *Physics - Uspekhi*, 50(3), 263-286, 2007.
- [2] N. H. Ibragimov, “Nonlinear self-adjointness in constructing conservation laws,” *Archives of ALGA*, vol. 7/8, pp. 1–90, 2010-2011.
- [3] L. V. Ovsiyannikov, *Group analysis of differential equations*. Moscow: Nauka, 1978. English transl., ed. W.F. Ames, Academic Press, New York, 1982.
- [4] I. S. Akhatov, R. K. Gazizov, and N. H. Ibragimov, “Nonlocal symmetries: Heuristic approach,” *Itogi Nauki i Tekhniki. Sovremennye problemy matematiki. Noveishye dostizhenia*, vol. 34, pp. 3–84, 1989. English transl., *Journal of Soviet Mathematics*, 55(1), pp. 1401–1450, 1991.
- [5] N. H. Ibragimov, *Selected Works, II*. Karlskrona: ALGA Publications, 2006.
- [6] N. H. Ibragimov, M. Torrisi, and A. Valenti, “Preliminary group classification of equations $v_{tt} = f(x, v_x)v_{xx} + g(x, v_x)$,” *J. Math. Phys.*, vol. 32, No. 11, pp. 2988–2995, 1991. Reprinted in: N.H. Ibragimov, *Selected Works, Vol. II*, ALGA Publications, Karlskrona, 2006, Paper 7.
- [7] N. H. Ibragimov and M. Torrisi, “A simple method for group analysis and its application to a model of detonation,” *J. Math. Phys.*, vol. 33, No. 11, pp. 3931–3937, 1992. Reprinted in: N.H. Ibragimov, *Selected Works, Vol. II*, ALGA Publications, Karlskrona. 2006, Paper 8.

KADOMTSEV-PETVIASHVILI EQUATION: NONLINEAR SELF-ADJOINTNESS AND CONSERVATION LAWS

NAIL H. IBRAGIMOV

Department of Mathematics and Science,
Blekinge Institute of Technology, SE-371 79 Karlskrona, Sweden

Abstract. The method of nonlinear self-adjointness is applied to the Kadomtsev-Petviashvili equation. The infinite set of conservation laws associated with the infinite algebra of Lie point symmetry of the KP equation is constructed.

Keywords: KP equation, nonlinear self-adjointness, Lie point symmetries, Conservation laws.

1 Lie point symmetries of the KP equation

It is convenient for our purposes to write the Kadomtsev-Petviashvili [1] equation

$$D_x(u_t - uu_x - u_{xxx}) = u_{yy}, \quad (1.1)$$

or

$$u_{tx} - uu_{xx} - u_x^2 - u_{xxx} = u_{yy},$$

in the form of the system (see [2] and the references therein)

$$u_t - uu_x - u_{xxx} - \omega_y = 0, \quad \omega_x - u_y = 0. \quad (1.2)$$

The Lie algebra of the infinitesimal symmetries of the KP equation (1.1) as well as of the system (1.2) is quite similar to the infinite-dimensional symmetry Lie algebra of the Lin-Reissner-Tsien equation [3]

$$2\varphi_{tx} + \varphi_x\varphi_{xx} = \varphi_{yy}, \quad (1.3)$$

describing the non-steady state gas flow with transonic velocities. The symmetry Lie algebra of Eq. (1.3) has been obtained in [4] (see also [5], §28). It involves five arbitrary functions of t and contains, in particular the following operators:

$$\begin{aligned} X_f = & 3f(t)\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + (f'(t)x + f''(t)y^2)\frac{\partial}{\partial x} + 2f'(t)y\frac{\partial}{\partial y} \\ & + [f''(t)x^2 + 2f'''(t)xy^2 + \frac{1}{3}f^{(4)}(t)y^4 - f'(t)\varphi]\frac{\partial}{\partial \varphi}, \end{aligned} \quad (1.4)$$

$$X_g = g(t) \frac{\partial}{\partial y} + g'(t)y \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + [2g''(t)xy + \frac{2}{3}g'''(t)y^3] \frac{\partial}{\partial \varphi}, \quad (1.5)$$

$$X_h = h(t) \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + [2h'(t)x + 2h''(t)y^2] \frac{\partial}{\partial \varphi}. \quad (1.6)$$

The system (1.2) admits the following operators (compare with (1.4)-(1.6)):

$$X_f = 3f \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + (f'x + \frac{1}{2}f''y^2) \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + 2f'y \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \quad (1.7)$$

$$- [2f'u + f''x + \frac{1}{2}f'''y^2] \frac{\partial}{\partial u} - [3f'\omega + f''yu + f'''xy + \frac{1}{6}f^{(4)}y^3] \frac{\partial}{\partial \omega},$$

$$X_g = 2g \frac{\partial}{\partial y} + g'y \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - g''y \frac{\partial}{\partial u} - [g'u + g''x + \frac{1}{2}g'''y^2] \frac{\partial}{\partial \omega}, \quad (1.8)$$

$$X_h = h \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - h' \frac{\partial}{\partial u} - h''y \frac{\partial}{\partial \omega}, \quad (1.9)$$

where f, g, h are three arbitrary functions of t . We will ignore the obvious symmetry

$$X_\alpha = \alpha(t) \frac{\partial}{\partial \omega}$$

of the system (1.2) describing the addition to ω an arbitrary function of t .

Note, that the operators (1.7)-(1.9) considered without the term $\frac{\partial}{\partial \omega}$ span the infinite-dimensional Lie algebra of symmetries of the KP equation (1.1). They coincide (up to normalizing coefficients) with the symmetries of the KP equation that were first obtained by F. Schwarz in 1982 (see also [6] and [7]).

2 Nonlinear self-adjointness

The Kadomtsev-Petviashvili equation written in the form (1.1) or in the form of the system (1.2) does not have a Lagrangian. Let us investigate the KP equation for nonlinear self-adjointness [8].

The formal Lagrangian for the system (1.2) is written

$$\mathcal{L} = v(u_t - uu_x - u_{xxx} - \omega_y) + z(\omega_x - u_y). \quad (2.1)$$

The reckoning shows that

$$\frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta u} = -v_t + uv_x + v_{xxx} + z_y,$$

$$\frac{\delta \mathcal{L}}{\delta \omega} = v_y - z_x.$$

Hence we can write the adjoint system to (1.2) in the form

$$v_t - uv_x - v_{xxx} - z_y = 0, \quad z_x - v_y = 0. \quad (2.2)$$

Eqs. (2.2) become identical with the KP equations (1.2) upon the substitution

$$v = u, \quad z = \omega. \quad (2.3)$$

It means that the system (1.2) is nonlinearly self-adjoint, specifically it is quasi self-adjoint ([8], Section 1.6, Definition 1.3).

3 Conservation laws provided by Lie point symmetries

Let us introduce the notation

$$x^1 = t, \quad x^2 = x, \quad x^3 = y, \quad u^1 = u, \quad u^2 = \omega$$

and write conservation laws in the form of the differential equation

$$[D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2) + D_y(C^3)]_{(1.2)} = 0, \quad (3.1)$$

where $|_{(1.2)}$ means that the equation holds on the solutions of the system (1.2).

We will use the general formula given in [8] for constructing the conserved vector associated with symmetry

$$X = \xi^i \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} + \eta^\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial u^\alpha}$$

of a system of differential equations with a classical or formal Lagrangian \mathcal{L} . Since the maximum order of derivatives involve in formal Lagrangian \mathcal{L} given by Eq. (2.1) is equal to three, this formula is written

$$\begin{aligned} C^i = & \xi^i \mathcal{L} + W^\alpha \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_i^\alpha} - D_j \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ij}^\alpha} \right) + D_j D_k \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ijk}^\alpha} \right) \right] \\ & + D_j (W^\alpha) \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ij}^\alpha} - D_k \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ijk}^\alpha} \right) \right] + D_j D_k (W^\alpha) \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ijk}^\alpha}, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$W^\alpha = \eta^\alpha - \xi^j u_j^\alpha.$$

We will apply the above formula to the symmetries (1.7)-(1.9). Invoking that the system (1.2) is nonlinearly self-adjoint with the substitution (2.3), we will replace in C^i the *non-physical variables* v and z with u and ω , respectively, thus arriving to conserved vectors for the KP system. Since the formal Lagrangian (2.1) vanishes on

the solutions of the system (1.2), we can omit the term $\xi^i \mathcal{L}$ and take the formula for the conserved vector in the following form:

$$C^i = W^\alpha \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_i^\alpha} - D_j \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ij}^\alpha} \right) + D_j D_k \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ijk}^\alpha} \right) \right] + D_j (W^\alpha) \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ij}^\alpha} - D_k \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ijk}^\alpha} \right) \right] + D_j D_k (W^\alpha) \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ijk}^\alpha}, \quad (3.2)$$

where

$$W^\alpha = \eta^\alpha - \xi^j u_j^\alpha, \quad \alpha = 1, 2. \quad (3.3)$$

Using in (3.2) the expression (2.1) for \mathcal{L} and eliminating v and z by means of Eqs. (2.3) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= uW^1, \\ C^2 &= -(u^2 + u_{xx})W^1 + \omega W^2 + u_x D_x(W^1) - u D_x^2(W^1), \\ C^3 &= -\omega W^1 - uW^2. \end{aligned} \quad (3.4)$$

The expressions (3.3) for the operator (1.7) are written:

$$W^1 = -3fu_t - (2u + xu_x + 2yu_y)f' - \left(x + \frac{1}{2}y^2u_x\right)f'' - \frac{1}{2}y^2f''', \quad (3.5)$$

$$W^2 = -3f\omega_t - (3\omega + x\omega_x + 2y\omega_y)f' - \left(yu + \frac{1}{2}y^2\omega_x\right)f'' - xyf''' - \frac{1}{6}y^3f^{(4)}.$$

Substituting W^1 given by (3.5) in the first equation (3.4) and eliminating u_t by using the first equation (1.2) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= -3(u^2u_x + uu_{xxx} + u\omega_y)f - (2u^2 + xuu_x + 2yu\omega_y)f' \\ &\quad - \left(xu + \frac{1}{2}y^2uu_x\right)f'' - \frac{1}{2}y^2uf'''. \end{aligned} \quad (3.6)$$

Now we single out the total derivatives with respect to x and y , by taking into account the second equation (1.2), and rewrite (3.6) in the form

$$C^1 = -\frac{1}{2}f'u^2 - \left(xf'' + \frac{1}{2}y^2f'''\right)u + D_x(P) + D_y(Q), \quad (3.7)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} P &= \left[\frac{3}{2}u_x^2 + \frac{3}{2}\omega^2 - u^3 - 3uu_{xx} \right] f - \frac{1}{2}f'xu^2 - \frac{1}{4}f''y^2u^2, \\ Q &= -3fu\omega - f'yu^2. \end{aligned} \quad (3.8)$$

Thus, the first component of the conserved vector can be reduced to the form

$$\tilde{C}^1 = -\frac{1}{2} f' u^2 - \left(x f'' + \frac{1}{2} y^2 f''' \right) u. \quad (3.9)$$

Remark 3.1. In reducing (3.6) to the form (3.7) we use simple identities such as

$$\begin{aligned} uu_{xxx} &= D_x(uu_{xx}) - u_x u_{xx} = D_x \left(uu_{xx} - \frac{1}{2} u_x^2 \right), \\ u\omega_y &= D_y(u\omega) - \omega u_y = D_y(u\omega) - \omega\omega_x = D_y(u\omega) - D_x \left(\frac{1}{2} \omega^2 \right), \\ 2yuu_y &= D_y(yu^2) - u^2. \end{aligned}$$

To find the second component of the conserved vector, we substitute the expressions (3.5) of W^1, W^2 in the second equation (3.4), add $D_t(P)$ with P defined in (3.8) and obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{C}^2 &= C^2 + D_t(P) \\ &= \left(uu_{xx} + \frac{1}{3} u^3 - \frac{1}{2} u_x^2 - \frac{1}{2} \omega^2 \right) f' + \left(xu_{xx} + \frac{1}{2} xu^2 - u_x \right) f'' \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{4} \left(y^2 u^2 + 2y^2 u_{xx} - 4xy\omega \right) f''' - \frac{1}{6} y^3 \omega f^{(4)} + D_y(R), \end{aligned}$$

where

$$R = \left(2yuu_{xx} + \frac{2}{3} yu^3 - yu_x^2 - y\omega^2 - xu\omega \right) f' - \frac{1}{2} y^2 u\omega f''. \quad (3.10)$$

Thus, the second component of the conserved can be reduced to

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{C}^2 &= \left(uu_{xx} + \frac{1}{3} u^3 - \frac{1}{2} u_x^2 - \frac{1}{2} \omega^2 \right) f' + \left(xu_{xx} + \frac{1}{2} xu^2 - u_x \right) f'' \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{4} \left(y^2 u^2 + 2y^2 u_{xx} - 4xy\omega \right) f''' - \frac{1}{6} y^3 \omega f^{(4)}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.11)$$

Finally, the third component of the conserved vector is obtained by substituting the expressions (3.5) of W^1, W^2 in the third equation (3.4) and adding $D_t(Q), D_x(R)$ with Q, R defined in (3.8), (3.8):

$$\tilde{C}^3 = C^3 + D_t(Q) + D_x(R).$$

The reckoning yields:

$$\tilde{C}^3 = u\omega f' + x\omega f'' + \left(xyu + \frac{1}{2} y^2 \omega \right) f''' + \frac{1}{6} y^3 u f^{(4)}. \quad (3.12)$$

Ignoring the tilde in the quantities (3.9), (3.11), (3.12), we summarize the result in the following statement.

Proposition 3.1. The infinitesimal symmetry (1.7) of the Kadomtsev-Petviashvili equations (1.1) provides the conserved vector $C = (C^1, C^2, C^3)$ with the components

$$\begin{aligned}
 C^1 &= -\frac{1}{2} f' u^2 - \left(x f'' + \frac{1}{2} y^2 f''' \right) u, \\
 C^2 &= \left(u u_{xx} + \frac{1}{3} u^3 - \frac{1}{2} u_x^2 - \frac{1}{2} \omega^2 \right) f' + \left(x u_{xx} + \frac{1}{2} x u^2 - u_x \right) f'' \\
 &\quad + \frac{1}{4} \left(y^2 u^2 + 2 y^2 u_{xx} - 4 x y \omega \right) f''' - \frac{1}{6} y^3 \omega f^{(4)}, \\
 C^3 &= u \omega f' + x \omega f'' + \left(x y u + \frac{1}{2} y^2 \omega \right) f''' + \frac{1}{6} y^3 u f^{(4)}.
 \end{aligned} \tag{3.13}$$

Remark 3.2. The validity of the conservation equation (3.1) for the vector (3.13) follows from the following equation:

$$\begin{aligned}
 &D_t(C^1) + D_x(C^2) + D_y(C^3) \\
 &= \left(u f' + x f'' + \frac{1}{2} y^2 f''' \right) (u_{xxx} + u u_x + \omega_y - u_t) \\
 &\quad + \left(\omega f' + x y f''' + \frac{1}{6} y^3 f^{(4)} \right) (u_y - \omega_x).
 \end{aligned} \tag{3.14}$$

The similar calculations for the operators (1.8) and (1.9) yield the following.

Proposition 3.2. The symmetry (1.8) of the system (1.1) provides the conserved vector $C = (C^1, C^2, C^3)$ with the components

$$\begin{aligned}
 C^1 &= y u g'', \\
 C^2 &= \left(x \omega - y u_{xx} - \frac{1}{2} y u^2 \right) g'' + \frac{1}{2} y^2 \omega g''', \\
 C^3 &= -(x u + y \omega) g'' - \frac{1}{2} y^2 u g'''.
 \end{aligned} \tag{3.15}$$

Proposition 3.3. The symmetry (1.9) of the system (1.1) provides the conserved vector $C = (C^1, C^2, C^3)$ with the components

$$\begin{aligned}
 C^1 &= u h', \\
 C^2 &= y \omega h'' - \left(u_{xx} + \frac{1}{2} u^2 \right) h', \\
 C^3 &= -\omega h' - y u h''.
 \end{aligned} \tag{3.16}$$

Different approaches to construction of conservation laws for the KP equation can be found, e.g. in [9, 10, 11]. In particular, the Lagrangian approach and the Noether theorem are used in the paper [11] which contains an interesting discussion of the infinite set of conservation laws. Note that the second equation of the system (1.2) guarantees that the vector field (u, ω) has the potential ϕ defined by $u = \phi_x$, $\omega = \phi_y$. Then the system (1.2) is replaced by the *potential KP equation*

$$\phi_{xt} - \phi_x \phi_{xx} - \phi_{xxxx} - \phi_{yy} = 0 \quad (3.17)$$

which, unlike equation (1.1) or the system (1.2), has a Lagrangian, namely

$$L = -\frac{1}{2} \phi_x \phi_t + \frac{1}{6} \phi_x^3 + \frac{1}{2} \phi_y^2 - \frac{1}{2} \phi_{xx}^2. \quad (3.18)$$

Now the Noether theorem can be used upon rewriting the symmetries of the KP equation in terms of the potential ϕ . This approach is used in the paper [12] which contains profound results on the conservation laws associated the infinite algebra of Lie point symmetries of Eq. (3.17). In particular, it is demonstrated their that the differential and integral forms of the conservation laws are equivalent only when the functions $f(t), g(t), h(t)$ in the symmetries (1.7)-(1.9) are low-order polynomials. For the details I refer the reader to [12].

Bibliography

- [1] B. B. Kadomtsev and V. I. Petviashvili, “On stability of solitary waves in weakly dispersive media,” *Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR*, vol. 192, pp. 753–756, 1970. English transl. *Sov. Phys. Dokl.*, **15**, (1970), 539-542.
- [2] V. E. Zakharov, S. V. Manakov, S. Novikov, and L. P. Pitaevskii, *Theory of solitons: The inverse scattering method*. Moscow: Nauka, 1980. English transl., S. Novikov, S.V. Manakov, L.P. Pitaevskii and V.E. Zakharov, *Theory of solitons: The inverse scattering method*, Consultants Bureau, New York, 1984.
- [3] C. C. Lin, E. Reissner, and H. S. Tsien, “Non-steady motion of a slender body in a compressible fluid,” *J. of Math. and Phys.*, vol. 27, No. 3, p. 220, 1948.
- [4] E. V. Mamontov, “Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR,” 185, vol. No. 3, pp. 538–541, 1969. (Russian).
- [5] N. H. Ibragimov, *Lie groups in some problems of mathematical physics*. Novosibirsk: Novosibirsk Univ. Press, 1972. English transl. in: N.H. Ibragimov, *Selected Works*, Vol. III, ALGA Publications, Karlskrona. 2008, Paper 1.
- [6] D. David, N. Kamran, D. Levi, and P. Winternitz, “Subalgebras of loop algebras and symmetries of the Kadomtsev-Petviashvili equation,” *Phys. Rev. Letters*, vol. 55, No. 20, pp. 2111 –2113, 1985.
- [7] C. Rogers and W. F. Ames, *Nonlinear boundary value problems in science and engineering*. Boston: Academic Press, 1989.
- [8] N. H. Ibragimov, “Nonlinear self-adjointness in constructing conservation laws,” *Archives of ALGA*, vol. 7/8, pp. 1–90, 2010-2011.
- [9] V. E. Zakharov and E. I. Schulman, “Degenerative dispersion laws, motion invariants and kinetic equations,” *Physica D*, vol. 1, pp. 192–202, 1980.
- [10] W. Oevel and B. Fuchssteiner, “Explicit formulas for symmetries and conservation laws of the Kadomtsev-Petviashvili equation,” *Phys. Letters*, vol. 88A, pp. 323–327, 1982.

- [11] E. Infeld and P. Frycz, “Infinite sequences of conservation laws for the Kadomtsev-Petviashvili equation,” *Acta Physica Polonica*, vol. B14, pp. 129–132, 1983.
- [12] V. Rosenhaus, “On conserved densities and asymptotic behaviour for the potential Kadomtsev-Petviashvili equation,” *J. Phys. A: Mathematical and General*, vol. 39, pp. 7693–7703, 2006.

NONLINEAR SELF-ADJOINTNESS AND CONSERVATION LAWS OF THE THOMAS EQUATION

NAIL H. IBRAGIMOV AND RAISA KHAMITOVA

Department of Mathematics and Science,
Blekinge Institute of Technology, SE-371 79 Karlskrona, Sweden

Abstract. It is shown that the Thomas equation is nonlinearly self-adjoint. Using this property and applying the theorem on nonlocal conservation laws the conservation laws corresponding to the symmetries of the equation in question are computed.

Keywords: Thomas equation, Nonlinear self-adjointness, Symmetry, Conservation law.

1 Introduction

Henry Thomas [1] suggested a mathematical model for describing the exchange of ions of a column of zeolite with a solution in which it is immersed (e.g. for water softening). The crucial assumption in constructing his model is that the rate of exchange of the cation into the zeolite obeys the simple law of two opposing second-order reactions:

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial t} = k_1(a - p)c - k_2p(c_0 - c), \quad k_1 \neq k_2; \quad k_1, k_2 = \text{const.}$$

Here $p(l, t)$ and $c(l, t)$ denote the cation concentrations in the zeolite and in the solution, respectively, at time t and at distance l from the input end of the zeolite column. The initial values of p and c are denoted by a and c_0 , respectively. Then, using the law of conservation of exchanging cation and introducing the new independent variables

$$x = \frac{l}{R}, \quad y = \frac{1}{m} \left(t - \frac{l}{R} \right),$$

where m and R constants describing the zeolite density in the column and constant flow rate of the solution, respectively, Thomas demonstrates that there exists a function $u(x, y)$ such that

$$du = cdy - pdx.$$

Using all this information he arrives at his renowned model given by the nonlinear second-order partial differential equation for $u(x, y)$

$$u_{xy} + \alpha u_y + \beta u_x + \gamma u_x u_y = 0 \tag{1.1}$$

with constant coefficients α, β, γ determined by

$$\alpha = mak_1, \quad \beta = mc_0k_2, \quad \gamma = m(k_1 - k_2).$$

It is manifest that they satisfy the conditions $\alpha > 0, \beta > 0, \gamma \neq 0$.

Thomas showed that Eq. (1.1) can be solved analytically. Namely, the change of the dependent variable

$$w = e^{\alpha x + \beta y + \gamma u} \quad (1.2)$$

maps Eq. (1.1) into the telegraph equation

$$w_{xy} - \alpha\beta w = 0. \quad (1.3)$$

Solving an arbitrary initial value problem for Eq. (1.3) by the well known Riemann's method and using the transformation (1.2) one obtains the solution of Eq. (1.1).

Note that the equations (1.1), (1.2) and (1.3) coincide, except for notation, with the equations (9), (11) and (12), respectively, from [1].

Eq. (1.1) can be reduced to another linear equation, namely, to the linearized equation (1.1):

$$z_{xy} + \alpha z_y + \beta z_x = 0, \quad (1.4)$$

by the transformation (see [2], Eq. (2.17))

$$\gamma u = \ln z \quad (1.5)$$

or by its generalizations (see [3], [4]) which are, however, mere combinations of (1.5) with symmetries of Eq. (1.1).

As mentioned above, the cation conservation is presupposed in derivation of the model (1.1). The question however arises if there are other conservation laws. The aim of the present paper is to investigate this physically significant question by applying the method of nonlinear self-adjointness [5] to Eq. (1.1).

2 Nonlinear self-adjointness

Let us investigate Eq. (1.1),

$$F \equiv u_{xy} + \alpha u_y + \beta u_x + \gamma u_x u_y = 0, \quad (2.1)$$

for nonlinear self-adjointness. The adjoint equation $F^* = 0$ is defined by (see [6]):

$$F^* \equiv \frac{\delta}{\delta u}(vF) = 0. \quad (2.2)$$

Here $v = v(x, y)$ is a new dependent variable and $\delta/\delta u$ is the variational derivative:

$$\frac{\delta}{\delta u} = \frac{\partial}{\partial u} - D_i \frac{\partial}{\partial u_i} + D_i D_j \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{ij}} - D_i D_j D_k \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{ijk}} + \dots$$

We will identify the first and the second independent variables with the time-like variable y and space-like variable x , respectively. Then the total differentiations D_i are written

$$D_1 = D_y = \frac{\partial}{\partial y} + u_y \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + u_{yj} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_j} + u_{yjk} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{jk}} + \dots,$$

$$D_2 = D_x = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + u_x \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + u_{xj} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_j} + u_{xjk} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{jk}} + \dots.$$

The expanded form of the adjoint equation (2.2) is

$$F^* \equiv v_{xy} - (\alpha + \gamma u_x)v_y - (\beta + \gamma u_y)v_x - 2\gamma v u_{xy}.$$

According to [5] (see also [7]), Eq. (2.1) is nonlinearly self-adjoint if there exists a substitution

$$v = \varphi(x, y, u), \quad \varphi(x, y, u) \neq 0, \tag{2.3}$$

such that

$$F^* = \lambda F, \tag{2.4}$$

where λ is an undetermined coefficient. The close concept was suggested independently in [8].

Let us investigate Eq. (2.1) for nonlinear self-adjointness. We insert the derivatives

$$v_y = \varphi_y + \varphi_u u_y,$$

$$v_x = \varphi_x + \varphi_u u_x,$$

$$v_{xy} = \varphi_{xy} + \varphi_{yu} u_x + \varphi_{xu} u_y + \varphi_{uu} u_x u_y + \varphi_u u_{xy}$$

of the substitution (2.3) in Eq. (2.4) and obtain the equation

$$(\varphi_u - 2\gamma\varphi)u_{xy} + (\varphi_{xu} - \alpha\varphi_u - \gamma\varphi_x)u_y + (\varphi_{yu} - \gamma\varphi_y - \beta\varphi_u)u_x$$

$$+ (\varphi_{uu} - 2\gamma\varphi_u)u_x u_y + \varphi_{xy} - \alpha\varphi_y - \beta\varphi_x = \lambda(u_{xy} + \alpha u_y + \beta u_x + \gamma u_x u_y).$$

It splits into the following system:

$$\varphi_u - 2\gamma\varphi = \lambda, \tag{2.5}$$

$$\varphi_{xu} - \alpha\varphi_u - \gamma\varphi_x = \alpha\lambda, \tag{2.6}$$

$$\varphi_{yu} - \gamma\varphi_y - \beta\varphi_u = \beta\lambda, \tag{2.7}$$

$$\varphi_{uu} - 2\gamma\varphi_u = \gamma\lambda, \tag{2.8}$$

$$\varphi_{xy} - \alpha\varphi_y - \beta\varphi_x = 0. \tag{2.9}$$

Eq. (2.5) determines λ . Substituting it in Eqs. (2.6)-(2.8) we obtain

$$\varphi_{xu} - 2\alpha\varphi_u - \gamma\varphi_x + 2\alpha\gamma\varphi = 0,$$

$$\varphi_{yu} - \gamma\varphi_y - 2\beta\varphi_u + 2\beta\gamma\varphi = 0, \tag{2.10}$$

$$\varphi_{uu} - 3\gamma\varphi_u + 2\gamma^2\varphi = 0.$$

The last equation in (2.10) has the solution

$$\varphi(x, y, u) = A(x, y)e^{2\gamma u} + B(x, y)e^{\gamma u}, \quad (2.11)$$

therefore Eq. (2.9) splits into 2 equations:

$$A_{xy} - \alpha A_y - \beta A_x = 0, \quad (2.12)$$

$$B_{xy} - \alpha B_y - \beta B_x = 0. \quad (2.13)$$

Substituting (2.11) in the first two equations (2.10) we obtain the equations

$$A_x - 2\alpha A = 0, \quad A_y - 2\beta A = 0.$$

whence

$$A(x, y) = Ke^{2(\beta y + \alpha x)}, \quad K = \text{const.}$$

This function also satisfies Eq. (2.12). Thus we have arrived at the following result.

Theorem 2.1. Eq. (2.1) is nonlinearly self-adjoint. The substitution (2.3) has the form

$$v(x, y, u) = Ke^{2(\beta y + \alpha x + \gamma u)} + B(x, y)e^{\gamma u}$$

where K is an arbitrary constant and $B(x, y)$ is any solution of Eq. (2.13).

Remark 2.1. Since Eq. (2.13) and Eq. (2.12) represent one and the same equation, the function $B(x, y) = e^{2(\beta y + \alpha x)}$ provides one of particular solutions of Eq. (2.13).

Remark 2.2. Eq. (2.13) is the adjoint equation to the linearized equation (1.4).

3 Symmetries of the Thomas equation

We choose an infinitesimal generator X admitted by (2.1) in the form

$$X = \xi^1(x, y, u)\frac{\partial}{\partial y} + \xi^2(x, y, u)\frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \eta(x, y, u)\frac{\partial}{\partial u}. \quad (3.1)$$

Eq. (2.1) admits X if the condition

$$XF = 0 \quad (3.2)$$

is satisfied on solutions of Eq. (2.1). We prolong the generator X to the derivatives involved in Eq. (2.1):

$$X = \xi^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial y} + \xi^2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \eta \frac{\partial}{\partial u} + \zeta_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial u_y} + \zeta_2 \frac{\partial}{\partial u_x} + \zeta_{12} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{xy}}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}\zeta_i &= D_i(\eta) - u_j D_i(\xi^j) = D_i(\eta) - u_y D_i(\xi^1) - u_x D_i(\xi^2), \\ \zeta_{12} &= D_x(\zeta_1) - u_{yy} D_x(\xi^1) - u_{xy} D_x(\xi^2).\end{aligned}$$

Then the determining equation (3.2) will have the form:

$$XF|_{F=0} = [\zeta_{12} + \alpha\zeta_1 + \beta\zeta_2 + \gamma(\zeta_1 u_x + u_y \zeta_2)]_{F=0} = 0.$$

Here

$$\zeta_1 = \eta_y + (\eta_u - \xi_y^1)u_y - \xi_y^2 u_x - \xi_u^2 u_y u_x - \xi_u^1 u_y^2, \quad (3.3)$$

$$\zeta_2 = \eta_x - \xi_x^1 u_y + (\eta_u - \xi_x^2)u_x - \xi_u^1 u_y u_x - \xi_u^2 u_x^2, \quad (3.4)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\zeta_{12} &= \eta_{xy} + (\eta_{xu} - \xi_{xy}^1)u_y + (\eta_{yu} - \xi_{xy}^2)u_x + (\eta_{uu} - \xi_{yu}^1 - \xi_{xu}^2)u_y u_x \\ &\quad - \xi_{xu}^1 u_y^2 - \xi_{yu}^2 u_x^2 - \xi_{uu}^1 u_y^2 u_x - \xi_{uu}^2 u_y u_x^2 - (\xi_x^1 + \xi_u^1 u_x)u_{yy} \\ &\quad - (\xi_y^2 + \xi_u^2 u_y)u_{xx} + [\eta_u - \xi_y^1 - \xi_x^2 - 2\xi_u^1 u_y - 2\xi_u^2 u_x]u_{xy}\end{aligned} \quad (3.5)$$

and $u_{xy} = -(\alpha u_y + \beta u_x + \gamma u_y u_x)$ should be substituted into (3.5). Since the functions ξ^1, ξ^2, η depend only on x, y, u , the determining equation can be split into several equations. Terms with the derivatives u_{yy} and u_{xx} are only in ζ_{12} , therefore we obtain the following equations:

$$u_{yy} : \xi_x^1 = 0, \quad \xi_u^1 = 0; \quad u_{xx} : \xi_y^2 = 0, \quad \xi_u^2 = 0. \quad (3.6)$$

Hence $\xi^1 = \xi^1(y)$, $\xi^2 = \xi^2(x)$. The use of Eqs. (3.6) helps to simplify the formulae (3.3)-(3.5). The remaining equations are

$$u_y u_x : \eta_{uu} + \gamma \eta_u = 0, \quad (3.7)$$

$$u_y : \eta_{xu} + \gamma \eta_x + \alpha \xi_x^2 = 0, \quad (3.8)$$

$$u_x : \eta_{yu} + \gamma \eta_y + \beta \xi_y^1 = 0, \quad (3.9)$$

$$\eta_{xy} + \alpha \eta_y + \beta \eta_x = 0. \quad (3.10)$$

Eq. (3.7) yields $\eta = f(x, y)e^{-\gamma u} + g(x, y)$. Then it follows from (3.8), (3.9) that

$$\gamma g_y + \beta \xi_y^1 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \gamma g_x + \beta \xi_x^2 = 0.$$

Hence

$$g(x, y) = -\frac{\beta}{\gamma} \xi^1(y) - \frac{\alpha}{\gamma} \xi^2(x).$$

Eq. (3.10) splits into 2 equations:

$$f_{xy} + \alpha f_y + \beta f_x = 0 \quad (3.11)$$

and

$$\xi_y^1 + \xi_x^2 = 0. \quad (3.12)$$

Thus

$$\xi^1 = C_1 y + C_2, \quad \xi_2 = -C_1 x + C_3, \quad \eta = f(x, y) e^{-\gamma u} + C_1 \left(\frac{\alpha}{\gamma} x - \frac{\beta}{\gamma} y \right) + C_4.$$

Hence the symmetry Lie algebra of the Thomas equation is spanned by the following generators:

$$X_1 = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, \quad X_2 = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, \quad X_3 = \frac{\partial}{\partial u}, \quad X_4 = \gamma y \frac{\partial}{\partial y} - \gamma x \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + (\alpha x - \beta y) \frac{\partial}{\partial u} \quad (3.13)$$

and

$$X_5 = f(x, y) e^{-\gamma u} \frac{\partial}{\partial u} \quad (3.14)$$

where $f(x, y)$ satisfies Eq. (3.11).

4 Conservation laws due to nonlinear self-adjointness

According to [6] we introduce a formal Lagrangian $\mathcal{L} \equiv vF$. We write it in the symmetrized form:

$$\mathcal{L} = v \left[\frac{1}{2}(u_{xy} + u_{yx}) + \alpha u_y + \beta u_x + \gamma u_x u_y \right]. \quad (4.1)$$

A conservation law corresponding to the operator (3.1) has the form

$$D_y(C^1) + D_x(C^2) = 0$$

which is satisfied on solutions of both equations $F = 0$ and $F^* = 0$. Here

$$C^i = \xi^i \mathcal{L} + W \left[\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_i} - D_j \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ij}} \right) \right] + D_j(W) \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ij}}, \quad W = \eta - \xi^i u_i, \quad i = 1, 2. \quad (4.2)$$

4.1 Case 1: $v = e^\phi$, $\phi = 2(\beta y + \alpha x + \gamma u)$

For this choice of v we obtain

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_i} - D_j \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial u_{ij}} \right) = 0,$$

therefore

$$C^1 = \xi^1 \mathcal{L} + \frac{1}{2} e^\phi D_x(W), \quad (4.3)$$

$$C^2 = \xi^2 \mathcal{L} + \frac{1}{2} e^\phi D_y(W).$$

The generator X_1 corresponding to the translation in y gives $W = -u_y$. It follows from Eq. (4.3) that

$$C^1 = \frac{-\alpha\beta}{\gamma} e^\phi + D_x \left[\frac{1}{2} \left(u_y + \frac{\beta}{\gamma} \right) e^\phi \right].$$

Transferring the second term in C^1 to C^2 in the form $D_y \left[\frac{1}{2} \left(u_y + \frac{\beta}{\gamma} \right) e^\phi \right]$ we arrive at

$$C^2 = \frac{1}{2} e^\phi D_y(W) + D_y \left[\frac{1}{2} \left(u_y + \frac{\beta}{\gamma} \right) e^\phi \right].$$

Hence

$$C^1 = -\frac{\alpha\beta}{\gamma} e^\phi, \quad C^2 = \left(\gamma u_y^2 + 2\beta u_y + \frac{\beta^2}{\gamma} \right) e^\phi. \quad (4.4)$$

The conservation law has the form

$$[D_y(C^1) + D_x(C^2)]_{F=0} = [D_y(e^\phi)F]_{F=0} = 0.$$

Other conservation laws can be calculated in the similar way.

For the translation in x with the generator X_2 we have $W = -u_x$. Eq. (4.3) yields

$$C^1 = \frac{1}{2} e^\phi D_x(W) = \left(\gamma u_x^2 - \frac{\alpha^2}{\gamma} \right) e^\phi + D_x \left[\frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\alpha}{\gamma} - u_x \right) e^\phi \right].$$

Thus

$$C^1 = \left(\gamma u_x^2 - \frac{\alpha^2}{\gamma} \right) e^\phi, \quad C^2 = \left(2\alpha u_y + \frac{\alpha\beta}{\gamma} \right) e^\phi. \quad (4.5)$$

The conservation law has the form

$$[D_y(C^1) + D_x(C^2)]_{F=0} = [D_x(e^\phi)F]_{F=0} = 0.$$

We can simplify the vector (4.5), $C = (C^1, C^2)$, further. Denoting the vectors (4.4), (4.5) by \bar{C} and \hat{C} , respectively, we take the linear combination

$$C = \frac{1}{\gamma} \left(\hat{C} - \frac{\alpha}{\beta} \bar{C} \right)$$

and obtain the new vector with the components

$$C^1 = u_x^2 e^\phi, \quad C^2 = -\frac{\alpha}{\beta} u_y^2 e^\phi. \quad (4.6)$$

Now the conservation law has the form

$$[D_y(C^1) + D_x(C^2)]_{F=0} = \left[2 \left(u_x - \frac{\alpha}{\beta} u_y \right) e^\phi F \right]_{F=0} = 0.$$

The translation in u with the generator X_3 gives a trivial conservation law, its density C^1 can be incorporated in C^2 .

For X_4 we have

$$W = \eta - \xi^i u_i = \alpha x - \beta y - \gamma y u_y + \gamma x u_x,$$

and Eq. (4.3) yields:

$$C^1 = [-\gamma^2 x u_x^2 + \alpha(\alpha x - \beta y + 1)]e^\phi + D_x \left\{ \frac{1}{2} [\gamma (y u_y + x u_x) + \beta y - \alpha x] e^\phi \right\}.$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= [-\gamma^2 x u_x^2 + \alpha(\alpha x - \beta y + 1)]e^\phi, \\ C^2 &= [\gamma^2 y u_y^2 + 2\gamma(\beta y - \alpha x)u_y + \beta(\beta y - \alpha x)]e^\phi. \end{aligned} \quad (4.7)$$

The conservation law has the form

$$[D_y(C^1) + D_x(C^2)]_{F=0} = [-2\gamma W e^\phi F]_{F=0} = 0.$$

For the generator X_5 given by (3.14) we have

$$W = f(x, y)e^{-\gamma u},$$

where $f(x, y)$ is any nontrivial ($f(x, y) \neq 0$) solution of Eq. (3.11). Invoking Eq. (4.3) we obtain

$$C^1 = (f_x + \alpha f)e^\phi + D_x \left(-\frac{1}{2} f e^\phi \right).$$

Thus

$$C^1 = (f_x + \alpha f)e^\phi, \quad C^2 = -(\gamma u_y + \beta)f e^\phi. \quad (4.8)$$

The conservation law is satisfied in the form

$$[D_y(C^1) + D_x(C^2)]_{F=0} = [-\gamma f e^\phi F + (f_{xy} + \alpha f_y + \beta f_x)e^\phi]_{F=0} = 0.$$

It is easy to show that $f_x + \alpha f \neq 0$ for any nontrivial solution of Eq. (3.11).

4.2 Case 2: $v = B(x, y)e^{\gamma u}$, $B_{xy} - \alpha B_y - \beta B_x = 0$

Here $B(x, y) \neq 0$ is any solution of Eq. (2.13). In what follows we use the notation

$$\Phi = B_{xy} - \alpha B_y - \beta B_x.$$

Eqs. (4.2) yield the following formulae for the conserved vector:

$$C^1 = \xi^1 \mathcal{L} + W \left[\left(\frac{\gamma}{2} u_x + \alpha \right) B - \frac{1}{2} B_x \right] e^{\gamma u} + \frac{1}{2} B e^{\gamma u} D_x(W), \quad (4.9)$$

$$C^2 = \xi^2 \mathcal{L} + W \left[\left(\frac{\gamma}{2} u_y + \beta \right) B - \frac{1}{2} B_y \right] e^{\gamma u} + \frac{1}{2} B e^{\gamma u} D_y(W).$$

Using Eq. (4.9) we obtain for the symmetry X_1

$$C^1 = -\frac{\beta}{\gamma} B_x e^{\gamma u} + D_x \left[\left(\frac{1}{2} u_y + \frac{\beta}{\gamma} \right) B e^{\gamma u} \right].$$

Hence

$$C^1 = -\frac{\beta}{\gamma} B_x e^{\gamma u}, \quad C^2 = \left(u_y + \frac{\beta}{\gamma} \right) B_y e^{\gamma u}, \quad B \neq \text{const.} \quad (4.10)$$

The conservation law has the form

$$[D_y(C^1) + D_x(C^2)]_{F=0} = [B e^{\gamma u} F + u_y e^{\gamma u} \Phi]_{F=0} = 0.$$

For the particular solution $B(x, y) = e^{2(\beta y + \alpha x)}$ of Eq. (2.13) mentioned in Remark 2.1 we can choose

$$C^1 = -\frac{\alpha}{\gamma} e^{\tilde{\phi}}, \quad C^2 = \left(u_y + \frac{\beta}{\gamma} \right) e^{\tilde{\phi}}, \quad \tilde{\phi} = 2(\beta y + \alpha x) + \gamma u.$$

For the generator X_2 Eq. (4.9) yields

$$C^1 = \frac{1}{\gamma} (\alpha B_x - B_{xx}) e^{\gamma u} + D_x \left\{ \left[\left(-\frac{1}{2} u_x - \frac{\alpha}{\gamma} \right) B + \frac{1}{\gamma} B_x \right] e^{\gamma u} \right\}.$$

It is easy to show that $\alpha B_x - B_{xx} \neq 0$ for any solution $B(x, y) \neq \text{const.}$ of Eq. (2.13). Using Eq. (2.13) we obtain

$$C^1 = \frac{1}{\gamma} (\alpha B_x - B_{xx}) e^{\gamma u}, \quad C^2 = \left(u_y + \frac{\beta}{\gamma} \right) B_x e^{\gamma u}, \quad B \neq \text{const.} \quad (4.11)$$

The conservation law is satisfied in the form

$$[D_y(C^1) + D_x(C^2)]_{F=0} = [B_x e^{\gamma u} F - \frac{1}{\gamma} u_x e^{\gamma u} D_x(\Phi)]_{F=0} = 0.$$

In Case 2 the generator X_3 provides a nontrivial conservation law. Eq. (4.9) gives

$$C^1 = (\alpha B - B_x)e^{\gamma u} + D_x \left(\frac{1}{2} B e^{\gamma u} \right).$$

Thus

$$C^1 = (\alpha B - B_x)e^{\gamma u}, \quad C^2 = (\gamma u_y + \beta) B e^{\gamma u}, \quad B \neq 0. \quad (4.12)$$

The conservation law has the form

$$[D_y(C^1) + D_x(C^2)]_{F=0} = [B e^{\gamma u} F - e^{\gamma u} \Phi]_{F=0} = 0.$$

For calculating the conservation law corresponding to the generator X_4 we will further simplify Eq. (4.9) by excluding the trivial conservation law with the density $\xi^1 \mathcal{L}$. Then we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= [x B_{xx} + (1 - 2\alpha x) B_x + \alpha(\alpha x - \beta y - 1) B] e^{\gamma u} \\ &+ D_x \left\{ \left[\frac{1}{2} B(3\alpha x + \beta y + \gamma y u_y + \gamma x u_x) - x B_x \right] e^{\gamma u} \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= [x B_{xx} + (1 - 2\alpha x) B_x + \alpha(\alpha x - \beta y - 1) B] e^{\gamma u}, \\ C^2 &= (\gamma u_y + \beta) [y B_y - x B_x + (\alpha x - \beta y) B] e^{\gamma u}, \end{aligned} \quad (4.13)$$

$$\text{where } x B_{xx} + (1 - 2\alpha x) B_x + \alpha(\alpha x - \beta y - 1) B \neq 0. \quad (4.14)$$

The conservation law has the form

$$\begin{aligned} [D_y(C^1) + D_x(C^2)]_{F=0} &= \left[\gamma [y B_y - x B_x + (\alpha x - \beta y) B] e^{\gamma u} F \right. \\ &\left. + (\gamma y u_y + \beta y - \alpha x + 1) e^{\gamma u} \Phi + x e^{\gamma u} D_x(\Phi) \right]_{F=0} = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Invoking Eq. (4.9) we obtain for the generator (3.14), X_5 ,

$$C^1 = f(\alpha B - B_x) + D_x \left(\frac{1}{2} B f \right).$$

Hence

$$C^1 = f(\alpha B - B_x), \quad C^2 = B(f_y + \beta f), \quad B \neq 0, f \neq 0. \quad (4.15)$$

The conservation law has the form

$$[D_y(C^1) + D_x(C^2)]_{F=0} = [B(f_{xy} + \alpha f_y + \beta f_x) - f(B_{xy} - \alpha B_y - \beta B_x) e^{\gamma u}]_{F=0} = 0.$$

It is a trivial conservation law.

5 Application of Noether's theorem

The telegraph equation (1.3) has the Lagrangian

$$L = w_x w_y + \alpha \beta w^2. \quad (5.16)$$

The change of the dependent variable (1.2) maps (5.16) into the following Lagrangian for Eq. (1.1):

$$L = [\gamma(\alpha u_y + \beta u_x + \gamma u_x u_y) + 2\alpha\beta]e^{2(\alpha x + \beta y + \gamma u)}. \quad (5.17)$$

The operator X_4 from (3.13) satisfies the invariance condition

$$X(L) + LD_i(\xi^i) = 0 \quad (5.18)$$

of the variational integral with the Lagrangian (5.17). Therefore we can apply the Noether theorem. Calculations show that the result of this application is the vector

$$\begin{aligned} C^1 &= [-\gamma^2 x u_x^2 + \alpha(\alpha x - \beta y + 1)]e^\phi, \\ C^2 &= [\gamma^2 y u_y^2 + 2\gamma(\beta y - \alpha x)u_y + \beta(\beta y - \alpha x)]e^\phi, \end{aligned}$$

i.e. the conserved vector (4.7) obtained by using the nonlinear self-adjointness.

One can verify that all other operators from (3.13) satisfy neither the invariance condition (5.18) nor the divergence condition

$$X(L) + LD_i(\xi^i) = D_i(B^i). \quad (5.19)$$

Hence, application of Noether's theorem to the symmetries (3.13) gives only one conserved vector for the Thomas equation, namely, the vector (4.7).

6 Summary

In this section we summarize all conserved vectors for the Thomas equation (1.1) provided by its symmetries (3.13). The conserved vectors contain the functions $f(x, y)$, $B(x, y)$ and $\phi(x, y, u)$ defined as follows.

The function $f(x, y)$ is any solution of the linearized equation (1.4):

$$f_{xy} + \alpha f_y + \beta f_x = 0. \quad (3.11')$$

The function $B(x, y)$ is any solution of the adjoint equation to Eq. (1.4):

$$B_{xy} - \alpha B_y - \beta B_x = 0. \quad (2.13')$$

Finally, the function $\phi(x, y, u)$ is given by

$$\phi = 2(\beta y + \alpha x + \gamma u).$$

The operators X_1, \dots, X_5 are taken from (3.13).

We have constructed the following nontrivial conserved vectors.

$$X_1 : \quad C^1 = -\frac{\alpha\beta}{\gamma}e^\phi, \quad C^2 = \left(\gamma u_y^2 + 2\beta u_y + \frac{\beta^2}{\gamma}\right)e^\phi \quad (4.4')$$

and

$$C^1 = -\frac{\beta}{\gamma}B_x e^{\gamma u}, \quad C^2 = \left(u_y + \frac{\beta}{\gamma}\right)B_y e^{\gamma u}. \quad (4.10')$$

$$X_2 : \quad C^1 = \left(\gamma u_x^2 - \frac{\alpha^2}{\gamma}\right)e^\phi, \quad C^2 = \left(2\alpha u_y + \frac{\alpha\beta}{\gamma}\right)e^\phi \quad (4.5')$$

and

$$C^1 = \frac{1}{\gamma}(\alpha B_x - B_{xx})e^{\gamma u}, \quad C^2 = \left(u_y + \frac{\beta}{\gamma}\right)B_x e^{\gamma u}. \quad (4.11')$$

We have simplified the vector (4.5') and obtained the new vector with the components

$$X_2 : \quad C^1 = u_x^2 e^\phi, \quad C^2 = -\frac{\alpha}{\beta}u_y^2 e^\phi. \quad (4.6')$$

$$X_3 : \quad C^1 = (\alpha B - B_x)e^{\gamma u}, \quad C^2 = (\gamma u_y + \beta)B e^{\gamma u}. \quad (4.12')$$

$$X_4 : \quad C^1 = [-\gamma^2 x u_x^2 + \alpha(\alpha x - \beta y + 1)]e^\phi, \quad (4.7')$$

$$C^2 = [\gamma^2 y u_y^2 + 2\gamma(\beta y - \alpha x)u_y + \beta(\beta y - \alpha x)]e^\phi$$

and

$$C^1 = [xB_{xx} + (1 - 2\alpha x)B_x + \alpha(\alpha x - \beta y - 1)B]e^{\gamma u}, \quad (4.13')$$

$$C^2 = (\gamma u_y + \beta)[yB_y - xB_x + (\alpha x - \beta y)B]e^{\gamma u},$$

where $xB_{xx} + (1 - 2\alpha x)B_x + \alpha(\alpha x - \beta y - 1)B \neq 0$.

$$X_5 : \quad C^1 = (f_x + \alpha f)e^\phi, \quad C^2 = -(\gamma u_y + \beta)fe^\phi. \quad (4.8')$$

Bibliography

- [1] H. C. Thomas, “Heterogeneous ion exchange in a flowing system,” *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, vol. 66, pp. 1664–1666, 1944.
- [2] R. R. Rosales, “Exact solutions of some nonlinear evolution equations,” *Stud. Appl. Math.*, vol. 59, pp. 117–151, 1978.
- [3] G. M. Wei, Y. T. Gao, and H. Zhang, “On the Thomas equation for the ion-exchange operations,” *Czechoslovak J. of Phys.*, vol. 52, No. 6, pp. 749–751, 2002.
- [4] Z. Y. Yan, “Study of the Thomas equation: a more general transformation (auto-Bäcklund transformation) and exact solutions,” *Czechoslovak J. of Phys.*, vol. 53, No. 4, pp. 297–300, 2003.
- [5] N. H. Ibragimov, “Nonlinear self-adjointness in constructing conservation laws,” *Archives of ALGA*, vol. 7/8, pp. 1–99, 2010-2011.
- [6] N. H. Ibragimov, “A new conservation theorem,” *Journal of Mathematical Analysis and Applications*, vol. 333, No. 1, pp. 311–328, 2007. doi: 10.1016/j.jmaa.2006.10.078.
- [7] N. H. Ibragimov, “Nonlinear self-adjointness and conservation laws,” *arXiv*, vol. 1107.4877v1 [math-ph], pp. 1–11, 2011.
- [8] M. L. Gandarias, “Weak self-adjoint differential equations,” *J. Phys. A: Math. Theor.*, vol. 44, 2011. doi:10.1088/1751-8113/44/26/262001.

Archives of ALGA

Brief facts about the centre ALGA: Advances in Lie Group Analysis

ALGA is an international research and educational centre aimed at producing new knowledge of Lie group analysis of differential equations and enhancing the understanding of the classical results and modern developments.

The main objectives of ALGA are:

- To make available to a wide audience the classical heritage in group analysis and to teach courses in Lie group analysis as well as new mathematical programs based on the philosophy of group analysis.
- To advance studies in modern group analysis, differential equations and non-linear mathematical modelling and to implement a database containing all the latest information in this field.

For more information contact Professor N.H. Ibragimov.

E-mail: nib@bth.se

Homepage: www.bth.se/alga

Address: ALGA, Blekinge Institute of Technology, S-371 79 Karlskrona, Sweden.

Aims and Scope of Archives

Aim: The aim of the Archives is to provide an international forum for classical and modern group analysis by means of rapid communication of new results, review articles and publications of historical heritage. The publications are related to the activities of ALGA.

Scope: The scope of Archives encompasses Lie group analysis with a focus on non-linear differential equations and mathematical models in science and engineering.